

# HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM)

## User's Manual

### *Details of the numerical code*

R. BLECK, LOS ALAMOS NATIONAL LABORATORY, USA  
G. HALLIWELL, UNIVERSITY OF MIAMI, USA  
A. WALLCRAFT, NAVAL RESEARCH LABORATORY, USA  
S. CARROLL, K. KELLY, K. RUSHING, PLANNING SYSTEMS INC., USA

CODE VERSION 2.0.01, MANUAL VERSION 2.0.01, MARCH 4, 2002

This manual is available at:

<http://panoramix.rsmas.miami.edu/hycom/documentation.html>

Report corrections to: ????

## Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>xiii</b>
0.1 Background . . . . .	xiii
0.2 Revisions to the manual . . . . .	xiii
0.3 Acknowledgements . . . . .	xiii
0.4 Funding . . . . .	xiii
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 FORTRAN 90 Version 2.0.01</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Declarations . . . . .	4
1.1.1 Symbolic constants . . . . .	4
1.1.2 Variables of state and auxiliary variables . . . . .	5
1.1.3 Assignments . . . . .	12
1.2 Initializations . . . . .	12
1.3 Running HYCOM . . . . .	12
1.3.1 Makefile . . . . .	12
1.3.2 Output for testing purposes . . . . .	13
1.4 Configuring HYCOM . . . . .	14
1.4.1 Implementation . . . . .	14
1.4.2 Projections . . . . .	14
1.4.3 Bathymetry . . . . .	15
<b>2 Continuity equation : <u>cnuity.f</u></b>	<b>16</b>
2.1 Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	16
2.1.1 FCT (Flux-Corrected Transport) scheme . . . . .	17
2.1.2 Interface diffusion . . . . .	20
2.2 Usage . . . . .	21
2.2.1 Order of operations . . . . .	22
2.2.2 Flowchart . . . . .	24
2.3 Variables . . . . .	25
2.3.1 Identification . . . . .	25
2.3.2 Local variables . . . . .	25
2.4 Procedures . . . . .	26
<b>3 Advection-diffusion : <u>tsadvf.f</u></b>	<b>27</b>
3.1 Formalism and numerical methods . . . . .	27
3.1.1 Maintaining the positivity of thickness . . . . .	27
3.1.2 Treatment of the tendency term . . . . .	28
3.1.3 Treatment of the diffusion term . . . . .	29
3.1.4 Filtering . . . . .	29
3.2 Usage . . . . .	30

3.2.1	Order of operations . . . . .	30
3.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	32
3.3	Variables . . . . .	32
3.3.1	Identification . . . . .	32
3.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	33
3.4	Procedures . . . . .	34
3.5	The <code>SMOLARKIEWICZ MPDATA</code> . . . . .	34
3.5.1	Formalism . . . . .	34
3.5.2	Usage . . . . .	36
3.5.3	Order of operations . . . . .	37
3.5.4	Flowchart . . . . .	38
3.5.5	Variables . . . . .	39
<b>4</b>	<b>Momentum Equation : <u>momtum.f</u></b>	<b>41</b>
4.1	Forcing . . . . .	41
4.1.1	Montgomery potential . . . . .	41
4.1.2	Bottom drag . . . . .	43
4.1.3	Influence of the wind . . . . .	44
4.2	Baroclinic System . . . . .	45
4.2.1	Numerical scheme . . . . .	45
4.2.2	Turbulent viscosity . . . . .	45
4.2.3	Turbulent momentum flux . . . . .	45
4.2.4	Intersection with the bathymetry . . . . .	46
4.2.5	Boundary conditions . . . . .	46
4.2.6	Vorticity . . . . .	47
4.3	Usage . . . . .	48
4.3.1	Order of operations . . . . .	48
4.3.2	Flowcharts . . . . .	50
4.4	Variables . . . . .	53
4.4.1	Identification . . . . .	53
4.4.2	Local variables . . . . .	54
4.5	Procedures . . . . .	56
<b>5</b>	<b>Barotropic mode : <u>barotp.f</u></b>	<b>57</b>
5.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	57
5.1.1	Rescaling of variables . . . . .	57
5.1.2	Rearrangement of the velocity profile . . . . .	58
5.1.3	Filtering . . . . .	58
5.1.4	Continuity equation . . . . .	59
5.1.5	Equations of motion . . . . .	59
5.2	Usage . . . . .	60
5.2.1	Order of operations . . . . .	60
5.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	62

5.3	Variables . . . . .	63
5.3.1	Identification . . . . .	63
5.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	63
5.4	Procedures . . . . .	64
<b>6</b>	<b>Ocean-atmosphere exchanges : <u>thermf.f</u></b>	<b>65</b>
6.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	65
6.1.1	Heat balance . . . . .	65
6.1.2	Mechanical energy transfers . . . . .	66
6.1.3	Thermal forcing at sidewalls . . . . .	66
6.1.4	Relaxation to SST and/or SSS . . . . .	67
6.1.5	Alternative bulk parameterizations of air-sea fluxes . . . . .	67
6.2	Usage . . . . .	67
6.2.1	Order of operations . . . . .	67
6.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	68
6.3	Variables . . . . .	68
6.3.1	Identification . . . . .	68
6.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	69
6.4	Procedures . . . . .	71
<b>7</b>	<b>Energy Loan Sea Ice Model : <u>icloan.f</u></b>	<b>72</b>
7.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	72
7.1.1	Surface temperature flux . . . . .	72
7.2	Usage . . . . .	73
7.2.1	Order of operations . . . . .	73
7.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	74
7.3	Variables . . . . .	74
7.3.1	Identification . . . . .	74
7.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	74
7.4	Procedures . . . . .	75
<b>8</b>	<b>KPP Vertical Mixing : <u>mxkpp.f</u></b>	<b>76</b>
8.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	76
8.1.1	Surface fluxes . . . . .	76
8.1.2	Diapycnal diffusivity in the ocean interior . . . . .	78
8.1.3	Surface boundary layer thickness . . . . .	79
8.1.4	Surface boundary layer diffusivity . . . . .	80
8.1.5	Vertical mixing . . . . .	82
8.2	Usage . . . . .	83
8.2.1	Order of Operations . . . . .	83
8.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	83
8.3	Variables . . . . .	83
8.3.1	Identification . . . . .	83

8.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	84
8.4	Procedures . . . . .	89
<b>9</b>	<b>Generalized Vertical Coordinates : <u>hybgen.f</u></b>	<b>90</b>
9.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	90
9.1.1	Vertical coordinate remapping . . . . .	90
9.1.2	Adjustment of vertical coordinates in shallow water regions . . . . .	94
9.1.3	Adjustment of temperature, salinity, density, and momentum . . . . .	94
9.1.4	Running HYCOM with isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM Mode)	95
9.2	Usage . . . . .	96
9.2.1	Order of Operations . . . . .	96
9.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	96
9.3	Variables . . . . .	96
9.3.1	Identification . . . . .	96
9.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	96
9.4	Procedures . . . . .	98
<b>10</b>	<b>Kraus-Turner Mixed Layer Model : <u>mxkrta.f</u> or <u>mxkrtb.f</u></b>	<b>99</b>
10.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	99
10.1.1	Full K-T model (hybrid coordinates with unmixing) . . . . .	99
10.1.2	Simplified K-T model (hybrid coordinates without unmixing) . . . . .	102
10.2	Usage . . . . .	104
10.2.1	Order of Operations . . . . .	104
10.2.2	Flowchart . . . . .	104
10.3	Variables . . . . .	104
10.3.1	Identification . . . . .	104
10.3.2	Local variables . . . . .	104
10.4	Procedures . . . . .	107
<b>11</b>	<b>Kraus-Turner Model - Diapycnal Mixing : <u>diapf1.f</u> or <u>diapf2.f</u></b>	<b>108</b>
11.1	Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	108
11.2	Hybrid coordinate explicit algorithm . . . . .	108
11.3	Usage . . . . .	111
11.3.1	Order of Operations . . . . .	111
11.3.2	Flowchart . . . . .	112
11.4	Variables . . . . .	112
11.4.1	Identification . . . . .	112
11.4.2	Local variables . . . . .	112
11.5	Procedures . . . . .	116

<b>12 MICOM Mode - K-T Model 3 : <u>mxkrtm.f</u></b>	<b>117</b>
12.1 Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	117
12.1.1 Internal energy and turbulent kinetic energy . . . . .	117
12.1.2 Parametrization of turbulent dissipation . . . . .	119
12.1.3 A recent prediction model of the mixed layer . . . . .	120
12.1.4 Entrainment condition . . . . .	121
12.1.5 Constants and numerical parameters . . . . .	122
12.2 Numerical techniques . . . . .	123
12.2.1 Entrainment algorithm . . . . .	123
12.2.2 Detrainment algorithm . . . . .	124
12.3 Usage . . . . .	126
12.3.1 Order of operations . . . . .	127
12.3.2 Flowchart . . . . .	130
12.4 Variables . . . . .	134
12.4.1 Identification . . . . .	134
12.4.2 Local variables . . . . .	135
12.5 Procedures . . . . .	138
<b>13 Convection - Kraus-Turner or MICOM Mode : <u>convch.f</u> or <u>convcm.f</u></b>	<b>139</b>
13.1 Usage . . . . .	139
13.1.1 Order of operations . . . . .	139
13.1.2 Flowchart . . . . .	139
13.2 Variables . . . . .	140
13.2.1 Identification . . . . .	140
13.2.2 Local variables . . . . .	140
13.3 Procedures . . . . .	141
<b>14 MICOM Mode - Diapycnal mixing : <u>diapf3.f</u></b>	<b>142</b>
14.1 Formalism and numerical techniques . . . . .	142
14.1.1 Turbulent diffusion . . . . .	142
14.1.2 Turbulent heat flux . . . . .	143
14.1.3 Numerical implementation . . . . .	144
14.2 Usage . . . . .	147
14.2.1 Order of operations . . . . .	147
14.2.2 Flowchart . . . . .	149
14.3 Variables . . . . .	150
14.3.1 Identification . . . . .	150
14.3.2 Local variables . . . . .	150
14.4 Procedures . . . . .	151
<b>15 Calculational grid</b>	<b>152</b>

<b>16</b>	<b>Boundary conditions in HYCOM</b>	<b>153</b>
16.1	Relaxation Boundary Conditions . . . . .	153
16.2	Open Boundary Conditions . . . . .	153
16.2.1	No distinction between inflow and outflow boundaries . . . . .	154
16.2.2	Well-posed boundary conditions . . . . .	154
16.2.3	Barotropic and baroclinic velocities . . . . .	156
<b>17</b>	<b>Equation of state and Related Issues</b>	<b>157</b>
17.1	Equation of state . . . . .	157
17.2	Cabbeling . . . . .	157
17.3	Thermobaric compressibility . . . . .	157
17.4	Usage . . . . .	158
17.4.1	Order of Operations . . . . .	158
<b>18</b>	<b>Sub-programs</b>	<b>159</b>
18.1	Functions . . . . .	159
18.2	Initialization Subroutines . . . . .	159
18.2.1	Subroutine BLKDAT . . . . .	159
18.2.2	Subroutine BLKINR . . . . .	160
18.2.3	Subroutine BLKINI . . . . .	160
18.2.4	Subroutine BLKINL . . . . .	160
18.2.5	Subroutine INICON . . . . .	161
18.2.6	Subroutine INIKPP . . . . .	161
18.3	Bathymetry Subroutines . . . . .	162
18.3.1	Subroutine BIGRID . . . . .	162
18.3.2	Subroutine INDXI . . . . .	162
18.3.3	Subroutine INDXJ . . . . .	163
18.3.4	Subroutine GEOPAR . . . . .	163
18.4	Main HYCOM Subroutines . . . . .	164
18.5	Atmospheric Forcing Subroutines . . . . .	166
18.5.1	Subroutine DPTHUV . . . . .	166
18.5.2	Subroutine DPUDPV . . . . .	166
18.5.3	Subroutine DPUDPVJ . . . . .	167
18.5.4	Subroutine RDMONTH . . . . .	167
18.5.5	Subroutine RDPALL . . . . .	167
18.5.6	Subroutine RDPALL1 . . . . .	168
18.5.7	Subroutine RDFORF . . . . .	168
18.5.8	Subroutine RDRLAX . . . . .	168
18.5.9	Subroutine FORDAY . . . . .	169
18.5.10	Subroutine FORFUNA . . . . .	169
18.5.11	Subroutine FORFUNH . . . . .	169
18.5.12	Subroutine FORFUNR . . . . .	169
18.6	Matrix Inversion Subroutines . . . . .	170

18.6.1	Subroutine TRIDCOF	170
18.6.2	Subroutine TRIDRHS	170
18.6.3	Subroutine TRIDMAT	171
18.7	Communication Subroutines	172
18.7.1	Subroutine XCAGET	173
18.7.2	Subroutine XCAPUT	173
18.7.3	Subroutine XCEGET	174
18.7.4	Subroutine XCEPUT	174
18.7.5	Subroutine XCHALT	174
18.7.6	Subroutine XCLGET	175
18.7.7	Subroutine XCLPUT	175
18.7.8	Subroutine XCMAXR_0	176
18.7.9	Subroutine XCMAXR_1	176
18.7.10	Subroutine XCMINR_0	176
18.7.11	Subroutine XCMINR_1	177
18.7.12	Subroutine XCSPMD	177
18.7.13	Subroutine XCSTOP	177
18.7.14	Subroutine XCSUM	178
18.7.15	Subroutine XCSUMJ	178
18.7.16	Subroutine XCSYNC	178
18.7.17	Subroutine XCTBAR	179
18.7.18	Subroutine XCTILR	179
18.7.19	Subroutine XCTMR*	180
18.8	Machine Dependent I/O Subroutines	182
18.8.1	Subroutine MACHINE	182
18.8.2	Subroutine FLUSH	182
18.8.3	Subroutine IEEE_RETROSPECTIVE	183
18.8.4	Subroutine GETENV	183
18.8.5	Subroutine ZAIOPN	183
18.8.6	Subroutine ZAIOPE	184
18.8.7	Subroutine ZAIOPF	184
18.8.8	Subroutine ZAIOPI	185
18.8.9	Subroutine ZAIOST	185
18.8.10	Subroutine ZAIOCL	185
18.8.11	Subroutine ZAIOFL	186
18.8.12	Subroutine ZAIORW	186
18.8.13	Subroutine ZAIORD3	186
18.8.14	Subroutine ZAIORD	187
18.8.15	Subroutine ZAIORDD	188
18.8.16	Subroutine ZAIOSK	188
18.8.17	Subroutine ZAIOWR3	188
18.8.18	Subroutine ZAIOWR	189

18.8.19 Subroutine ZAIOWRD . . . . .	190
18.9 Pipe Comparison Subroutines . . . . .	191
18.9.1 Subroutine PIPE_INIT . . . . .	191
18.9.2 Subroutine PIPE_COMPARE . . . . .	191
18.9.3 Subroutine PIPE_COMPARALL . . . . .	191
18.10 Diagnostic Output Subroutines . . . . .	192
18.10.1 Subroutine OVERTN . . . . .	192
18.10.2 Subroutine STENCL . . . . .	192
18.11 Plotting Subroutines . . . . .	192
18.11.1 Subroutine PRTMSK . . . . .	192
18.11.2 Subroutine PSMOOTH . . . . .	194
18.11.3 Subroutine PSMOOTH_MAX . . . . .	194
18.11.4 Subroutine ZEBRA . . . . .	194
18.11.5 Subroutine ZEBRAM . . . . .	195
18.11.6 Subroutine DIGPLT . . . . .	195

**Acronyms****196**

## List of Figures

1	<i>Vertical discretization of the multilayer ocean . . . . .</i>	16
2	<i>Order of the treatment of the continuity equation for the baroclinic mode in HYCOM 2.0.01 . . . . .</i>	24
3	<i>Order of transport and horizontal diffusion calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01</i>	32
4	<i>Order of horizontal transport calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01 . . . . .</i>	38
5	<i>Initial vertical distribution of pressure, density, and Montgomery potential.</i>	42
6	<i>Order of the treatment of the forcing terms in the momentum equations . .</i>	50
7	<i>Order of the treatment of the momentum equation . . . . .</i>	51
8	<i>Schematic of the intersection of layers with solid boundaries . . . . .</i>	52
9	<i>Distribution of variables used in the evaluation of the Coriolis term at the central point <math>u(i, j)</math> . . . . .</i>	53
10	<i>Order of the barotropic mode calculation . . . . .</i>	62
11	<i>Order of the thermal balance calculation in the mixed layer in HYCOM 2.0.01</i>	68
12	<i>Conservation of heat during detrainment of the mixed layer. . . . .</i>	125
13	<i>Flowchart of the calculation of the mixed layer evolution in MICOM mode</i>	130
14	<i>Conservation of salt in updating the mixed layer. . . . .</i>	131
15	<i>Illustration of the mechanism of updating the mixed layer in the case when 100% detrainment is possible. . . . .</i>	132
16	<i>Illustration of the mechanism of updating the mixed layer in the case when partial detrainment is possible. . . . .</i>	133
17	<i>Illustration of the calculation of turbulent flux <math>F_k</math>. . . . .</i>	143
18	<i>Illustration of the calculation of the divergence of the turbulent flux <math>F_k</math>. . .</i>	144
19	<i>Illustration of the generalization of Hu (1991) in the case of an ascending mass transfer. . . . .</i>	145
20	<i>Order of the mixed layer calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01 . . . . .</i>	149
21	<i>Distribution of variables on an Arakawa C grid . . . . .</i>	152

**List of Tables**

1	Variables in file Common_blocks.h . . . . .	5
2	Parameters for calculation of radiation flux . . . . .	77
3	Initialization subroutines . . . . .	159
4	Bathymetry subroutines . . . . .	162
5	Main HYCOM subroutines . . . . .	164
6	Atmospheric forcing subroutines . . . . .	166
7	Matrix inversion subroutines . . . . .	170
8	Communication subroutines . . . . .	172
9	Machine I/O subroutines . . . . .	182
10	Pipe comparison subroutines . . . . .	191
11	Diagnostic output subroutines . . . . .	192
12	Plotting subroutines . . . . .	193

## Preface

### 0.1 Background

This manual was written to describe HYCOM, *code* version 2.0.01. This version of the manual was patterned after the MICOM *manual* version 2.6A written by G. Langlois, *Agence de Développements en Hydrodynamique et Océanographie Côtière, France*. The original MICOM User's Manual was written in French, and revised and translated to the English version 2.9 by D. Brydon, Los Alamos National Laboratory, USA, R. Bleck, University of Miami, USA, and S. Dean, Los Alamos National Laboratory, USA.

### 0.2 Revisions to the manual

MICOM, Version 2.6A, February 7, 1997.

HYCOM, Version 2.0.01, March 4, 2002.

### 0.3 Acknowledgements

HYCOM version 2.0.01 was released July 2, 2001, with development the result of collaborative efforts between the University of Miami, the Los Alamos National Laboratory, and the Naval Research Laboratory.

### 0.4 Funding

Ongoing HYCOM research has been funded under the National Oceanographic Partnership Program (NOPP) and the Office of Naval Research (ONR) to develop it for use in a global ocean data assimilation system and as the ocean component of a coupled ocean-atmosphere model.

## Introduction

The HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM; (Halliwell *et al.*, 1998; 2000; Bleck, 2001) is a primitive equation ocean general circulation model that evolved from the Miami Isopycnic-Coordinate Ocean Model (MICOM) developed by Rainer Bleck and colleagues. MICOM has become one of the premier ocean circulation models, having been subjected to validation studies (e.g. Chassignet *et al.*, 1996; Roberts *et al.*, 1996; Marsh *et al.*, 1996) and used in numerous ocean climate studies (e.g., New and Bleck, 1995; New *et al.*, 1995; Hu, 1996, 1997; Halliwell, 1997, 1998; Bleck 1998 and references therein). HYCOM was developed to address known shortcomings of the MICOM vertical coordinate scheme. MICOM vertical coordinates are isopycnic except for model layer 1, which is a non-isopycnic slab mixed layer. This leads to two significant problems: First, slab models must be used to govern mixed layer entrainment and detrainment. MICOM was equipped with a Kraus-Turner type model as described in Niiler and Kraus (1977), but using the modified turbulent kinetic energy balance parameterization of Gaspar (1988). Second, vertical coordinates are “wasted” because all model layers less dense than the mixed layer (layer 1) exist as zero-thickness layers at the mixed layer base. Although MICOM has produced good scientific results, improvements in the representation of vertical mixing, and the representation of oceanic flow in shallow-water and weakly stratified regions are constrained by these vertical coordinate limitations.

Vertical coordinates in HYCOM remain isopycnic in the open, stratified ocean. However, they smoothly transition to  $z$  coordinates in the weakly-stratified upper-ocean mixed layer, to terrain-following sigma coordinate in shallow water regions, and back to level coordinates in very shallow water. The latter transition prevents layers from becoming too thin where the water is very shallow. The vertical coordinates that were “wasted” in MICOM are used to provide vertical resolution within the surface mixed layer. This enables the use of more sophisticated non-slab closure schemes. One important goal for HYCOM is to provide the capability of selecting among several different vertical mixing schemes for both the surface mixed layer and the comparatively weak interior diapycnal mixing. No vertical mixing algorithm can provide a perfect representation of ocean mixing and its influence on ocean circulation and climate. When using an ocean model to study processes sensitive to vertical mixing, it is a good idea to run simulations with different mixing algorithms to quantify the sensitivity of scientific results to the mixing parameterizations. One specific example is the use of coupled ocean-atmosphere models to quantify global warming rates expected from greenhouse gas increases. This warming is likely to be sensitive to the parameterization of vertical mixing in the ocean model. HYCOM is designed to easily test these sensitivities whether used alone or in a coupled system. Sensitivity of ocean mixing to other factors such as the vertical structure and resolution of the vertical grid can also be readily tested.

The K-Profile Parameterization (KPP, Large *et al.*, 1994; 1997) algorithm was included as the first non-slab mixed layer model for several reasons. It provides mixing throughout the water column with an abrupt but smooth transition between the vigorous mixing in the surface boundary layer and the relatively weak diapycnal mixing in the ocean inte-

rior. It works on a relatively coarse and unevenly spaced vertical grid. It parameterizes the influence of a larger suite of physical processes than other commonly used mixing schemes. In the ocean interior, the contribution of background internal wave breaking, shear instability mixing, and double diffusion (both salt fingering and diffusive instability) are parameterized. In the surface boundary layer, the influences of wind-driven mixing, surface buoyancy fluxes, and convective instability are parameterized. The KPP algorithm also parameterizes the influence of nonlocal mixing of T and S, which permits the development of countergradient fluxes. The Kraus-Turner slab model has also been included in HYCOM. With the release of HYCOM version 2.1, two additional mixed layer models have been included: the dynamical instability model of Price *et al.* (1986), and the Mellor-Yamada level 2.5 turbulence closure used in the Princeton Ocean Model (Mellor and Yamada, 1982; Mellor, 1998). Other mixed layer models will be included in the near future, such as the model developed recently by Canuto (2000).

## 1 FORTRAN 90 Version 2.0.01

In version 2.0.01 of the FORTRAN code of HYCOM, the *main* program is named `hycom.f`. The dimensions of various variables are introduced by means of symbolic constants. The corresponding `parameter` statements are grouped in the file `dimensions.h` (*cf.* § 1.1.1). The dimension declarations are grouped in the file `common_blocks.h` (*cf.* § 1.1). The program makes calls to different statement functions grouped in the file `stmt_fns.h` (*cf.* § 18).

Before iterative integration calls, it is necessary to define the different characteristics of a simulation. The setup of HYCOM 2.0.01 can be summarized in the following manner :

1. The first step consists of introducing the bathymetry (*cf.* § 1.4.3) and taking steps to distinguish the submerged zones from those on land. (*cf.* § 1.4.3).
2. The second phase has the goal of characterizing the projection used. Several options may be used, including mercator (dx.eq.dy), rotated mercator, uniform latitude (dx.ne.dy), and square uniform latitude (dx.eq.dy). Generally, in HYCOM the system of equations is solved on a Mercator grid with the  $x$  axis indicating East and the  $y$  axis pointing North. In HYCOM 2.0.01, the rotated mercator option is not functional. HYCOM uses MKS units throughout, with all input in MKS and with fluxes positive into the ocean.
3. Initialization of the variables is done in the third step (*cf.* § 1.2).
4. The iterative computations are based on ten main procedures depending on which model option is chosen. For the non-slab K-Profile Parameterization model setup (KPP), the subroutines are listed in the order called along with the function it performs below :

```

subroutine cnuity : continuity equation ;
subroutine tsadv : advection equation ;
subroutine momtum : momentum equations ;
subroutine barotp : dynamic barotropic mode ;
subroutine thermf : ocean-atmosphere exchanges ;
subroutine icloan : ocean-ice exchanges ;
subroutine mxkpp  : k-profile vertical mixing ;
subroutine hyngen : vertical coordinate remapping .

```

Alternatively, HYCOM may be run with the Kraus-Turner (KT) model setup. The KT model governs mixing only within the mixed layer, while the KPP model provides mixing from surface to bottom. When the KT model is selected, interior diapycnal mixing can either be explicit (as in MICOM) or implicit (based on a subset of the KPP scheme). If the KT option is chosen, then the subroutine `mxkpp` is replaced by the following:

```

subroutine mxkrta or mxkrtb : bulk surface mixed layer ;
subroutine convch          : vertical convection ;
subroutine diapf1 or diapf2 : diapycnal mixing (explicit, implicit) .

```

If HYCOM is run in MICOM compatability mode, then mxkpp and hybgen are replaced by:

```

subroutine mxkrtm : bulk surface mixed layer ;
subroutine convcm : vertical convection ;
subroutine diapf3 : diapycnal mixing (explicit MICOM mode) .

```

HYCOM's scheme needs results of the previous two computations. These results are saved via the last dimension, which has an extent of 2. The index  $m$  represents the solution at time step  $n\Delta t$  and the index  $n$  represents alternately the results at  $(n-1)\Delta t$  and  $(n+1)\Delta t$ .

5. After each iteration, the version 2.0.01 of HYCOM offers a certain number of outputs (writing files, graphical output, *etc.*) as well as one control test. (*cf.* § 1.3.2).

## 1.1 Declarations

### 1.1.1 Symbolic constants

The different parametric constants have been grouped in the following list :

(itdm), idm, ii, ii1	(total)grid dimension in i direction
(jtdm), jdm, jj, jj1	(total)grid dimension in j direction
kdm, kk	grid dimension in k direction
iqr, jqr	maximum number of tiles in i,j direction
mxthrd	maximum number of OpenMP threads
nbdy	halo size
ms, msd	maximum number of submerged segments in rows or columns
ahalf, athird, afourth	1/2, 1/3, 1/4

These values are fixed in **dimensions.h** and in **stmt\_fns.h** :

### 1.1.2 Variables of state and auxiliary variables

The `common_blocks.h` file declares the variables found in the following table :

Table 1: Variables of file `common_blocks.h`

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/hycom1r</i>		
u, v	Real	Velocity components.
dp, dpu, dpv	Real	Layer thickness.
p, pu, pv	Real	Interface pressure.
dpold	Real	Layer thickness.
dpoldm	Real	Layer thickness.
corio	Real	Coriolis parameter.
psikk	Real	Montgomery potential in bottom layer.
thkk	Real	Virtual potential density in bottom layer.
potvor	Real	Potential vorticity.
temp	Real	Temperature.
saln	Real	Salinity.
th3d	Real	Potential density.
thstar	Real	Virtual potential density.
diaflx	Real	Time integral of diapyc.flux.
tracer	Real	Inert tracer (optional).
<i>Common/hycom2r</i>		
montg	Real	Montgomery potential.
uflx, vflx	Real	Mass fluxes.
uflxav, vflxav	Real	Average fluxes.
dpav	Real	Average fluxes.
ubavg, vbavg	Real	Barotropic velocity.
pbavg	Real	Barotropic pressure.
defor1, defor2	Real	Deformation components.
ubrhs, vbrhs	Real	Rhs of barotropic u,v equations.
utotm, vtotm,	Real	Total (barotropic + baroclinic) velocities at 2 time levels.
utotn, vtotn		
uflux, vflux,	Real	Horizontal mass fluxes.
uflux1, vflux1,		
uflux2, vflux2,		
uflux3, vflux3		

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/hycom3r</i>		
util1, util2, util3, util4	Real	Arrays for temporary storage.
scux, scuy	Real	Mesh size at u points in x, y direction.
scvx, scvy	Real	Mesh size at v points in x, y direction.
scu2, scv2	Real	Grid box size at u,v points.
scp2, scq2	Real	Grid box size at p, q points.
scuxi, scvyi	Real	Inverses of scux, scvy.
scp2i, scq2i	Real	Inverses of scpx, scqy.
pgfx, pgfy	Real	Horizontal pressure gradient.
gradx, grady	Real	Horizontal pressure gradient.
depthu, depthv	Real	Bottom pressure at u,v points.
pvtrop	Real	Potential vorticity of barotropic flow.
depths	Real	Water depth.
drag	Real	Bottom drag.
<i>Common/hycom4r</i>		
uja, ujb, via, vib	Real	Velocities at lateral neighbor points.
pbot	Real	Bottom pressure at t = 0.
sgain	Real	Salinity changes from diapyc.mix.
surflx	Real	Surface net thermal energy flux.
sswflx	Real	Surface swv thermal energy flux.
salfx	Real	Surface salinity flux.
buoyfl	Real	Net surface buoyancy flux.
buoysw	Real	Shortwave buoyancy flux.
ustar	Real	Friction velocity.
turgen	Real	Turbulent kinetic energy generation.
thkice	Real	Grid-cell average ice thickness (m).
covice	Real	Ice coverage (rel. units).
temice	Real	Ice surface temperature.
<i>Common/hycom4i</i>		
klist	Integer	K-index.
jerlov	Integer	Jerlov water type 1-5.

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/hycom5r</i>		
dpmixl	Real	Mixed layer depth.
t1sav	Real	Upper sublayer temperature.
s1sav	Real	Upper sublayer salinity.
tmlb	Real	Temperature in layer containing mlb.
smlb	Real	Salinity in layer containing mlb.
hekman	Real	Ekman layer thickness.
dpbl	Real	Turbulent boundary layer depth.
dpmold	Real	Mixed layer depth.
tmix	Real	Mixed layer temperature.
smix	Real	Mixed layer salinity.
thmix	Real	Mixed layer potential density.
umix, vmix	Real	Mixed layer velocity.
dp0sig	Real	Minimum sigma separation.
dp0k	Real	Minimum z-layer separation.
<i>Common/hycom5i</i>		
nmlb	Integer	Layer containing mlb.
<i>Common/swtchs</i>		
diagno	Logical	Output model fields and diagnostic messages.
thermo	Logical	Use thermodynamic forcing (flxflg > 0).
windf	Logical	Use wind stress forcing (wndflg > 0).
pcipf	Logical	Use evap-precip surface salinity flux.
relax	Logical	Activate lateral boundary nudging.
srelax	Logical	Activate surface salinity nudging.
trelex	Logical	Activate surface temperature nudging.
relaxf	Logical	Input relaxation fields (relax.or.srelax.or.trelax).
hybrid	Logical	Use hybrid vertical coordinates.
isopyc	Logical	Use isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM mode).
tbaric	Logical	Include thermobaricity (kappaf).
icegln	Logical	Use energy loan ice model (iceflg =1).
mxlhta	Logical	KT: activate original mixed layer model (mlflag = 2).
mxlhtb	Logical	KT: activate alternative mixed layer model (mlflag = 3).
mxlhtc	Logical	KT: activate MICOM or HYCOM Kraus-Turner (mlflag = 2, 3).
pensol	Logical	KT: activate penetrating solar radiation.
mxlkpp	Logical	KPP: activate mixed layer model (mlflag = 1).
shinst	Logical	KPP: activate shear instability mixing.
dbdiff	Logical	KPP: activate double diffusion mixing.
nonloc	Logical	KPP: activate nonlocal boundary layer mixing.
difsmo	Logical	KPP: activate horizontal smooth diff coeffs.
trcrin	Logical	Initialize tracer from restart file.
trcout	Logical	Advect tracer and save results in history/restart file.

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/hycom1c</i>		
ctitle	Character	Four lines describing the simulation.
<i>Common/frcing</i>		
pwall	Real	Pressure boundary condition at sidewalls.
swall	Real	Salinity boundary condition at sidewalls.
twall	Real	Temperature boundary condition at sidewalls.
taux	Real	Wind stress in x direction.
tauy	Real	Wind stress in y direction.
wndspd	Real	Wind speed (tke source).
airtmp	Real	Air temperature.
vapmix	Real	Atmospheric vapor mixing ratio.
precip	Real	Precipitation.
radflx	Real	Net solar radiation.
swflx	Real	Net shortwave radiation.
rmu	Real	Weights for sidewall boundary conditions relax.
betard	Real	Red extinction coefficient.
betabl	Real	Blue extinction coefficient.
redfac	Red	Fraction of penetrating red light.
<i>Common/kppr</i>		
zgrid	Real	Grid levels in centimeters.
vcty	Real	Vertical viscosity coefficient.
difs	Real	Vertical scalar diffusivity.
dift	Real	Vertical temperature diffusivity.
ghats	Real	Nonlocal transport.
vonk	Real	Von karman constant
zmin, zmax	Real	Zehat limits for table.
umin, umax	Real	Ustar limits for table.
epsilon	Real	Vertical coordinate scale factor.
cmonob	Real	Constant for calculating monin-obukov length.
rinfty	Real	KPP: value for calculating rshear instability.
difm0	Real	KPP: maximum viscosity due to shear instability.
difs0	Real	KPP: maximum diffusivity due to shear instability.
difmiw	Real	KPP: background/internal wave viscosity (m <sup>2</sup> /s).
difsiw	Real	KPP: background/internal wave diffusivity (m <sup>2</sup> /s).
dsfmax	Real	KPP: salt fingering diffusivity factor (m <sup>2</sup> /s).
rrho0	Real	KPP: salt fingering $rp = (\alpha \cdot \Delta T) / (\beta \cdot \Delta S)$ .
ricr	Real	KPP: critical bulk Richardson number.
cs	Real	KPP: value for nonlocal flux term.
cstar	Real	KPP: value for nonlocal flux term.

Variable	Type	Description
<b><i>Common/kppr cont'd</i></b>		
cv	Real	KPP: Value for turbulent shear contribution to bulk Richardson number.
c11	Real	KPP: Value for turbulent velocity scale.
deltaz	Real	Delta zehat in table.
deltau	Real	Delta ustar in table.
vtc	Real	Constant for estimating background shear in rib calculation.
cg	Real	Constant for estimating nonlocal flux term of diff. Equations.
dp0enh	Real	Distance for tapering diff. Enhancement at interface nbl-1.
<b><i>Common/kppi</i></b>		
niter	Integer	KPP: iterations for semi-implicit solution. (2 recommended).
<b><i>Common/varblsr</i></b>		
time	Real	Model time (days).
delt1	Real	Timestep (seconds).
dlt	Real	Delta T.
w0,w1,w2,w3	Real	Weights for atmospheric forcing time interpolation.
wr0,wr1,wr2,wr3	Real	Weights for relaxation climatology time interpolation.
<b><i>Common/varblsd</i></b>		
area	Real	Basing area ( $m^2$ ).
avgbot	Real	Mean basin depth (m).
watcum	Real	Cumulative heat flux.
empcum	Real	Cumulative salt flux.
<b><i>Common/varblsi</i></b>		
nstep	Integer	Model time step number.
nstep1	Integer	First time step of this integration.
nstep2	Integer	Last time step of this integration.
lstep	Integer	Number of barotropic time steps per baroclinic time step.
l0,l1,l2	Integer	Atmospheric forcing sample index.
lr0, lr1, lr2	Integer	Relaxation climatology sample index.

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/parms1r</i>		
sigma (kdm)	Real	Layer target densities.
theta (kdm)	Real	Layer target densities (sigma) minus reference density (thbase).
thbase	Real	Reference density.
saln0	Real	Initial salinity value.
baclin	Real	Baroclinic time step.
batrop	Real	Barotropic time step.
veldff	Real	Diffusion velocity (m/s) for momentum dissipation.
temdff	Real	Diffusion velocity (m/s) for temperature/salinity mixing.
thkdff	Real	Diffusion velocity (m/s) for thickness diffusion.
viscos	Real	Nondimensional, used in deformation-dependent viscosity
biharm	Real	Fraction of diffusion that is biharmonic (0.0 to 1.0).
vertmx	Real	Diffusion velocity (m/s) for mom.mixing across mixed layer base.
diapyc	Real	KT: diapycnal diffusivity x buoyancy frequency.
dtrate	Real	KT: maximum permitted m.l. detrainment rate (m/day).
h1	Real	Depth interval used in lateral weighting of horizontal pressure gradient.
slip	Real	+ 1 for free-slip, - 1 for non-slip boundary conditions.
cb	Real	Coefficient of quadratic bottom friction.
cbar	Real	Rms flow speed (m/s) for linear bottom friction law.
dsurfq	Real	Number of days between model diagnostics at the surface.
diagfq	Real	Number of days between model diagnostics.
rstrfq	Real	Number of days between model restart output.
wuv1, wuv2	Real	Weights for time smoothing of u, v field.
wts1, wts2	Real	Weights for time smoothing of t, s field.
wbaro	Real	Weight for time smoothing of barotropic u, v, p field.
thkmin	Real	Minimum mixed-layer thickness.
thkbot	Real	Thickness of bottom boundary layer.
sigjmp	Real	Minimum density jump across interfaces (theta units).
tmljmp	Real	Equivalent temperature jump across the mixed layer (deg C).
salmin (kdm)	Real	Minimum salinity allowed in an isopycnic layer.
dp00	Real	Z-level spacing minimum thickness.
dp00f	Real	Z-level spacing stretching factor.
dp00x	Real	Z-level spacing maximum thickness.
dp00s	Real	Sigma spacing minimum thickness.

Variable	Type	Description
<b><i>Common/parms1i</i></b>		
mixfrq	Integer	KT: number of time steps between diapycnal mixing calculations.
nhybrd	Integer	Number of hybrid levels (0 = all isopycnal).
nsigma	Integer	Number of sigma levels (nhybrd - nsigma z-levels).
hybflg	Integer	Hybrid generator flag.
advflg	Integer	Scalar advection flag.
ntracr	Integer	Number of time steps between tracer transport.
clmflg	Integer	Climatology frequency flag.
dypflg	Integer	KT: diapycnal mixing flag.
iniflg	Integer	Initial state flag.
lbflg	Integer	Lateral barotropic boundary flag.
mapflg	Integer	Map flag.
yrflg	Integer	Days in year flag.
iversn	Integer	Hycom version number x10.
icxpt	Integer	Experiment number x10.
jerlv0	Integer	Initial jerlov water type (1 to 5).
iceflg	Integer	Ice model flag.
wndflg	Integer	Wind stress input flag.
flxflg	Integer	Thermal forcing flag.
<b><i>Common/consts</i></b>		
tenm, onem, tencm, onecm, onemm	Real	Pressure thickness values corresponding to 10m, 1m...
g	Real	Gravity acceleration.
thref	Real	Reference value of specific volume.
spciph	Real	Specific heat of sea water.
epsil	Real	Small nonzero number used to prevent division by zero.
huge	Real	Large number used to indicate land points.
radian	Real	
pi	Real	
<b><i>Common/testpt</i></b>		
[ij]test	Integer	Local grid point where detailed diagnostics are desired.
[ij]ttest	Integer	Global grid point where detailed diagnostics are desired.
<b><i>Common/pivot</i></b>		
grido	Real	Mesh size of latitude/longitude grid in degrees.
ypivn	Real	The j-index of the equator.
gridn	Real	Mesh size of actual model grid in degrees longitude (xpivo, ypivo, xpivn not used).

Variable	Type	Description
<i>Common/iovars</i>		
flnmdep, flnmrsi, flnmrso, flnmflx, flnmarc, flnmovr, flnmfor, flnmforw	Character	Filenames.

### 1.1.3 Assignments

All the parameters are initialized by a *block data* sub-program whose statements are in **blkdat.f**.

Unlike MICOM, HYCOM 2.0.01 uses the MKS system of units.

## 1.2 Initializations

The field variables are initialized by two successive steps :

1. Calling the *subroutine* **inicon.f** whose main function is to set all initial values to zero. During this step, the Montgomery potential (*cf.* § 4.1) and the potential vorticity of the model ocean at rest are also calculated.
2. Reading of data from the preceding run.

## 1.3 Running HYCOM

### 1.3.1 Makefile

The make process is automated by the script **Make.com**, which should be used instead of directly invoking the make command. The makefile sources are found in the **/config** directory. The configuration files are  $\$(ARCH)\_ \$(TYPE)$ , where ARCH defines the machine architecture to target and TYPE is the parallelization strategy and precision. The following configuration files are currently available for HYCOM 2.0.01:

The script **Make.com** should be edited by the user to define  $\$(ARCH)$  appropriately for the machine. The following list of environment variables must be defined in each configuration file:

FC	Fortran 90 compiler.
FCFFLAGS	Fortran 90 compilation flags.
CC	C compiler.
CCFLAGS	C compilation flags.

E10K\_one4 - Sun E10000, single processor {,real\*4}  
 E10K\_omp - Sun E10000, OpenMP  
 alpha\_one4 - Compaq Alpha, single processor {,real\*4}  
 alpha\_omp - Compaq Alpha, OpenMP  
 o2k\_one4 - SGI Origin 2000, single processor {,real\*4}  
 o2k\_omp - SGI Origin 2000, OpenMP  
 sp3\_one4 - IBM SMP Power3, single processor {,real\*4}  
 sp3\_omp - IBM SMP Power3, OpenMP  
 sp3\_q64omp - IBM SMP Power3, OpenMP (64-bit memory model)  
 sp3\_ompi - IBM SMP Power3, OpenMP and MPI  
 sp3\_mpi - IBM SMP Power3, MPI  
  
 sunU2\_one4 - Sun Ultra2, single processor {,real\*4}  
 t3e\_one - Cray T3E, single processor  
 t3e\_mpi - Cray T3E, MPI  
 t3e\_shmem - Cray T3E, SHMEM

CPP                               cpp preprocessor (may be implied by FC).  
 CPPFLAGS                        cpp -D macro flags.  
 LD                                Loader.  
 LDFLAGS                         Loader flags.  
 EXTRALIBS                       Extra local libraries (if any).

In addition, rules are required for .c.o, .f.o, and .F.o.

Once **Make.com** has been edited, the executable is created by the command:

```
./Make.com >& Make.log
```

### 1.3.2 Output for testing purposes

The coordinates of the point where detailed results are printed are specified in `common/testpt/ :`

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

Version 2.0.01 of HYCOM does one type of test :

1. Estimation of the meridional overturning rate. This is done in the subroutine **overtn.f**, where the zonally averaged meridional heat flux is calculated.

## 1.4 Configuring HYCOM

### 1.4.1 Implementation

The geometry of the application domain is stored in the file **dimensions.h**. The horizontal extent is defined by the two parameters `idm` and `jdm`. The specification of islands and continents is done with the help of the parameter `ms`. It sets the maximum number of interruptions of the oceanic domain in rows or in columns plus one. The equivalent in the diagonal direction is represented by the parameter `msd`. For each of the four points of the C grid  $(u, v, \Delta p, Q)$ , `common/gindex/` contains seven tables of entries :

1. One table of dimension `idm*jdm` : `iu(idm,jdm)`. At submerged points, `iu(i,j)=1`; else, `iu(i,j)=0`.
2. One table comprising the number of submerged segments in the row  $i$  : `isu(jdm)`;
3. A table giving the lower limits of each segment by column : `ifu(jdm,ms)` ;
4. A table giving the upper limits of each segment by column : `ilu(jdm,ms)` ;
5. A table comprising the number of segments of the column  $j$  : `jsu(idm)` ;
6. A table of lower limits of each segment by row : `jfu(idm,ms)` ;
7. A table of upper limits of each segment by row : `jlu(idm,ms)`.

A segment is defined as a number of contiguous submerged points. To represent the separation between land and sea along the diagonals, `common/diags/` contains 5 tables whose values come from numerical processing of the bathymetry file (*cf.* § 1.4.3):

1. A table of the number of segments in each diagonal : `nsec(idm+jdm)`;
2. A table of the abscissas of the lower limits of each segment : `ifd(idm+jdm,msd)` ;
3. A table of the abscissas of the upper limits of each segment : `ild(idm+jdm,msd)` ;
4. A table of the ordinates of the lower limits of each segment : `jfd(idm+jdm,msd)` ;
5. A table of the ordinates of the upper limits of each segment : `jld(idm+jdm,msd)`.

This information is only used in diagnosing the barotropic stream function.

### 1.4.2 Projections

The default (`mapflg = 0`) is a conventional Mercator projection with square grid cells. The array orientation is also conventional with the first array dimension,  $i$ , West to East and the second,  $j$ , South to North. The grid location is defined by the longitude (`reflon`) of one pressure grid point (`pntlon`), the latitudinal grid point (`pntlat`) on the equator, and the longitudinal grid size (`grdlon`) which is identical to the latitudinal grid size at the equator (`grdlat`).

### 1.4.3 Bathymetry

The distribution of variables in a C grid is such that only  $idm-1*jdm-1$  depths are required to represent the bathymetry of the 'rectangular' portion of the ocean considered. (*cf.* § 15). By convention, land zones are given a depth of zero. The distinction between exposed and submerged zones is carried out by the call :

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

The boundaries of the segments along diagonals are needed by the optional Poisson solver (*cf.* § 1.3.2.) To integrate the system of equations over the whole domain, the boundaries of segments by rows and by columns have to be determined for the four points which bound the mesh (*cf.* § 15). To do this, in **bigrid.f**, we have the statements :

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

## 2 Continuity equation : cnuity.f

### 2.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

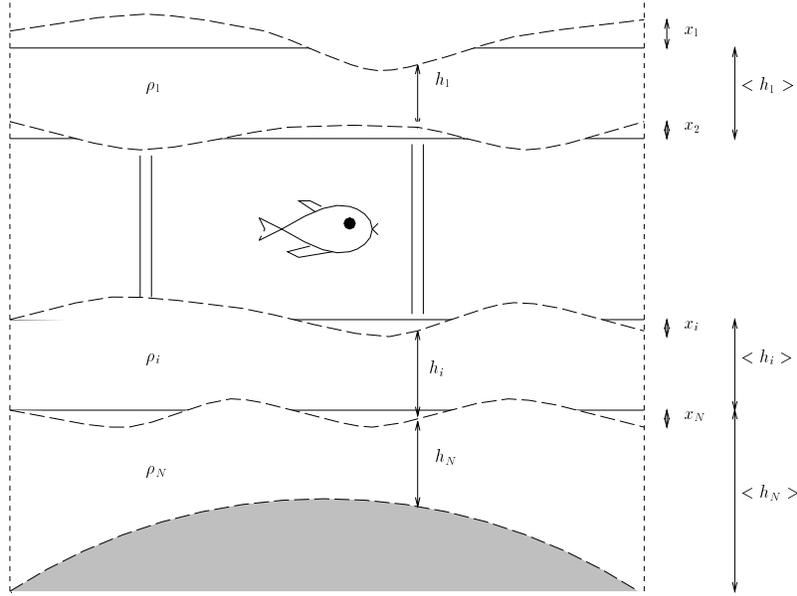


Figure 1: *Vertical discretization of the multilayer ocean*

Bleck & Smith (1990) assume that the difference in pressure between the two interfaces of the  $k^{th}$  layer has the form :

$$\Delta p_k = (1 + \eta) \Delta p'_k \quad (1)$$

with  $\Delta p_k = g \rho_k h_k$  and  $\Delta p'_k = g \rho_k h'_k$ . Elsewhere, the decomposition is introduced as :

$$\mathbf{u}_k = \bar{\mathbf{u}} + \mathbf{u}'_k \quad (2)$$

with :

$$\bar{\mathbf{u}} = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^N \rho_k h_k \mathbf{u}_k}{\sum_{k=1}^N \rho_k h_k} \quad (3)$$

and :

$$\overline{\mathbf{u}'_k} = 0 \quad (4)$$

The tendency equation for the component  $\Delta p'$  entering in the total expression for the

change of pressure in the layer  $k$  is then written (Bleck & Smith, 1990) :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Delta p'_k + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u} \Delta p')_k = \frac{\Delta p'_k}{p'_b} \nabla \cdot (\bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b) \quad (5)$$

Under the hydrostatic hypothesis, with a free surface, the equation is written :

$$p'_b = \sum_{k=1}^N \Delta p'_k = g \sum_{k=1}^N \rho_k h'_k = g \rho_r H \quad (6)$$

with  $H$  the water depth :

$$H(x, y) = \sum_{k=1}^N \langle h_k \rangle = \sum_{k=1}^N h_k - \xi_1 \quad (7)$$

$\langle h_k \rangle$  represents the initial thickness of the layer  $k$  and  $\xi_1$  represents the change in the free surface (*c.f.* figure 1).  $\rho_r$  is the column mean density.

### 2.1.1 FCT (Flux-Corrected Transport) scheme

The base FCT scheme from the work of Zalesak (1986) is outlined here in 7 steps :

1. The first inference of the variable  $\Delta p'_k$  is made by introducing a classic upstream scheme. The variable is denoted by  $\Delta p'_{i,j,k}{}^{up}$  in the layer  $k$ . The diffusive fluxes of this first step are calculated from the total velocity field  $\mathbf{u}$ . Consider the problem (5) without its second term in a one-dimensional form and take  $\mathbf{P}'_k = (\mathbf{u} \Delta p')_k$ . Then write :

$$P'_{i+1/2,k}{}^{up} = (u \Delta p')_{i+1/2,k}{}^{up} = \begin{cases} u_{i+1/2,k}^{mid} \Delta p'_{i,k}{}^{old} & \text{if } u_{i+1/2,k} > 0 \\ u_{i+1/2,k}^{mid} \Delta p'_{i+1,k}{}^{old} & \text{if } u_{i+1/2,k} < 0 \end{cases} \quad (8)$$

where *mid* and *old* refer to two successive instants in the leapfrog scheme. In a donor-cell scheme, the upstream fluxes as well as the velocity should be defined at the interfaces between the cells.

2. Always in using the total velocity field, proceed next to calculate the non-diffusive flux by a scheme second-order in space and centered in time :

$$P'_{i+1/2,k}{}^* = (u \Delta p')_{i+1/2,k}{}^* = u_{i+1/2,k}^{mid} \frac{\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^{mid} + \Delta p'_{i+1,k}{}^{mid}}{2}. \quad (9)$$

3. The flux of anti-diffusion  $\mathbf{A}$  is introduced such that :  $A_{i+1/2,k} = P_{i+1/2,k}^{l*} - P_{i+1/2,k}^{lup}$ . To assure the stability of the scheme (*i.e.* to counter the appearance of negative values of  $\Delta p_{i,k}^{lnew}$ ), substitute the anti-diffusive flux  $\mathbf{A}$  with the corrected flux  $\mathbf{A}^c$  such that :  $A_{i+1/2,k}^c = C_{i+1/2,k} A_{i+1/2,k}$  and with :  $0 \leq C \leq 1$ . For  $C = 0$ , we restore the flux of order 1 and  $C = 1$  gives back the flux of order 2. The final solution is expressed by a combination of fluxes of orders one and two which moderates the perturbations of stability which appear. For each layer (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995),

$$C_{i+1/2,k} = \begin{cases} \min(R_{i+1,k}^+; R_{i,k}^-) & \text{if } A_{i+1/2,k} \geq 0 \\ \min(R_{i,k}^+; R_{i+1,k}^-) & \text{if } A_{i+1/2,k} < 0 \end{cases} \quad (10)$$

where the following factors are successively introduced :

$$\mathbf{I} \begin{cases} P_{i,k}^+ = \max(0, A_{i-1/2,k}) - \min(0, A_{i+1/2,k}) \\ P_{i,k}^- = \max(0, A_{i+1/2,k}) - \min(0, A_{i-1/2,k}) \end{cases} \quad (11)$$

then :

$$\mathbf{II} \begin{cases} Q_{i,k}^+ = \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmax} - \Delta p_{i,k}^l \\ Q_{i,k}^- = \Delta p_{i,k}^l - \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmin} \end{cases} \quad (12)$$

and

$$\mathbf{III} \begin{cases} R_{i,k}^+ = \begin{cases} \min\left(1, \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} \frac{Q_{i,k}^+}{P_{i,k}^+}\right) & \text{if } P_{i,k}^+ > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } P_{i,k}^+ = 0 \end{cases} \\ R_{i,k}^- = \begin{cases} \min\left(1, \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} \frac{Q_{i,k}^-}{P_{i,k}^-}\right) & \text{if } P_{i,k}^- > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } P_{i,k}^- = 0 \end{cases} \end{cases} \quad (13)$$

$R_{i,k}^+$  and  $R_{i,k}^-$  represent the biggest multiplicative factors of anti-diffusive flux which assure respectively :  $\Delta p_{i,k}^{ln+1} \leq \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmax}$  and  $\Delta p_{i,k}^{ln+1} \geq \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmin}$  with :

$$\begin{cases} \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmax} = \max(\Delta p_{i-1,k}^{ln}, \Delta p_{i,k}^{ln}, \Delta p_{i+1,k}^{ln}) \\ \Delta p_{i,k}^{lmin} = \min(\Delta p_{i-1,k}^{ln}, \Delta p_{i,k}^{ln}, \Delta p_{i+1,k}^{ln}) \end{cases} \quad (14)$$

The formulas corresponding to the bidimensional case are given in Baraille & Filatoff (1995).

4. In summing the form (5) without the second term over the N layers of the vertical discretization, when  $\partial p'_b / \partial t = 0$  :

$$\mathbf{P}' = \sum_{k=1}^N \nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}'_k = 0 \quad (15)$$

It is clear that to satisfy this condition, a second order approximation of the flux  $\mathbf{P}'$  is better than any lower order approximation. The following identity is then written :

$$\sum_{k=1}^N \left( P'_{i+1/2,k} - P'_{i-1/2,k} \right) = 0 \quad (16)$$

The sum of anti-diffusive flux corrections over the vertical introduces a bias in the conservation of  $p'_b$  which must be compensated. To do this, calculate the vertical sum of flux corrections (by means of a second order approximation) :

$$\mathcal{A}_{i+1/2} = \sum_{k=1}^N \left( 1 - C_{i+1/2,k} \right) \mathbf{A}_{i+1/2,k} \quad (17)$$

5. To evaluate the effect of the anti-diffusive flux “integral”, calculate by layer the new thickness :

$$\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^\dagger = \Delta p'_{i,k}{}^{up} - \Delta t \left( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}^c \right)_{i,k} \quad (18)$$

From the new thickness, the bottom pressure is then obtained :

$$p'_{b_i}{}^\dagger = \sum_{k=1}^N \Delta p'_k{}^\dagger \quad (19)$$

6. Unless  $C_{i+1/2,k} = 1$  for each layer,  $p'_{b_i}{}^\dagger \neq p'_{b_i}$ . To remedy this problem, a second correction  $B$  is made to the upstream flux such that :

$$B_{i+1/2,k} = \frac{\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^\dagger}{p'_{b_i}{}^\dagger} \mathcal{A}_{i+1/2} \quad (20)$$

The final flux takes the form :

$$P'_{i+1/2,k}{}^{fin} = P'_{i+1/2,k}{}^{up} + A_{i+1/2,k}^c + B_{i+1/2,k} \quad (21)$$

and the preceding estimation  $\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^\dagger$  is rectified by the relation :

$$\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^\ddagger = \Delta p'_{i,k}{}^\dagger - \Delta t \left( \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} \right)_{i,k} \quad (22)$$

where the bottom pressure is set to :

$$p_{b_i}^{\dagger} = \sum_{k=1}^N \Delta p_{i,k}^{\dagger} \quad (23)$$

7. The last step is to account for the right hand side of the original equation (5). Once at this stage, the claim is made that the flux was corrected to best satisfy  $\partial p'_b / \partial t = 0 \quad \forall i$ . From this claim, the following statement can be written for each layer  $k$  :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Delta p_k^{fin} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}_k^{fin} = \frac{\Delta p_k^{fin}}{p'_b} \nabla \cdot (\bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b) \quad (24)$$

in order to eventually satisfy :

$$\sum_{k=1}^N \Delta p_k^{fin} = p'_b. \quad (25)$$

For all points, the form (24) is summed over the vertical giving that :

$$\nabla \cdot \left( \sum_{k=1}^N \mathbf{P}_k^{fin} \right) = \nabla \cdot (\bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b). \quad (26)$$

In the divergence term, the vertical flux average and the flux sum are in equilibrium. On the other hand, the flux and therefore the layer thickness may need adjustment. Accounting for the second term of (5) in the calculation of the final thickness  $\Delta p_k^{fin}$  gives the simple equation :

$$\Delta p_k^{fin} = \frac{\Delta p_k^{\dagger}}{p'_b} p'_b. \quad (27)$$

From this :

$$p_{k+1}^{fin} = \sum_{l=1}^k \Delta p_l^{fin} \quad \text{for } k = 1, \dots, N \quad (28)$$

with therefore :  $p_{N+1}^{fin} = p_b^{fin} \equiv p'_b$ . Then in the summations (6), (19), (23) and (28), the surface pressure is assumed to be zero ( $p'_1 = 0$ ).

### 2.1.2 Interface diffusion

In the shallow-water multilayer model, the conservation of mass is cast in the form (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995) :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Delta p_k + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u} \Delta p)_k = 0 \quad (29)$$

Once the decomposition (1) is introduced in the formula, one sees that formally equation (5) comes from the approximation:  $(1 + \eta) \approx 1$ . Notice that nevertheless the use of this

approximation does not disturb in any case the property:  $\partial p'_b / \partial t = 0$  (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995). Thus, the sum of the changes in  $\Delta p'$  over the vertical in this approximation is such that at each point,  $p'_b$  stays constant. In practice, the accounting of  $\eta$  is such that :

$$1 + \eta = \frac{1}{\rho_r H} \sum_{k=1}^N \rho_k h_k \quad (30)$$

so as to restore the introduction of a diffusion term  $\nabla \cdot (\nu \nabla \Delta p')$  in the conservation equation (5). As in finite differences, the product  $\nu \partial(\Delta p) / \partial x$  is numerically equivalent to  $u_d \delta p$  (where  $\delta p$  represents the growth of the thickness of a layer between two adjacent meshes), Bleck *et al.* (1992) introduce a "diffusion velocity"  $u_d \equiv \nu / \Delta x$  (where  $\Delta x$  is the size of the mesh) to simulate the isopycnic diffusion. Typically  $u_d = 0.5 \text{ cm/s}$  for the variable  $\Delta p$ .

From the preceding FCT scheme,  $p'_{i,k}{}^{fin}$  and  $p'_{i-1,k}{}^{fin}$ , the pressures at the  $k^{th}$  density interface in two adjacent points with coordinates  $x_i$  and  $x_{i-1}$ , are obtained. In these two points, the bottom pressures are respectively  $p'_{b_i}$  and  $p'_{b_{i-1}}$ . This statement is made concrete by the form :

$$D_{i-1/2,k} = \min \left\{ p'_{b_i} - p'_{i,k} \max \left[ p'_{i-1,k} - p'_{b_{i-1}}, \frac{u_d \Delta t}{\Delta x} (p'_{i-1,k} - p'_{i,k}) \right] \right\}. \quad (31)$$

During a time interval  $\Delta t$ , the variation of pressure at the interface  $k$  comes from the expression :

$$\frac{\partial p'_{i,k}}{\partial t} + \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D})_{i,k} = 0 \quad (32)$$

This last equation is then written for the interfaces  $k = 2, \dots, N$  :

$$p'_{i,k}{}^{m+1} = p'_{i,k}{}^{fin} - (D_{i+1/2,k} - D_{i-1/2,k}) \quad (33)$$

in which :

$$\Delta p'_{i,k}{}^{m+1} = p'_{i,k+1}{}^{m+1} - p'_{i,k}{}^{m+1} \quad (34)$$

To remain coherent with the previous step, the flux retained at the two interfaces of the layer are written :

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{F}_{i+1/2,k-1}^{fin} &= \mathbf{P}_{i+1/2,k-1}^{fin} + \frac{1}{\Delta t} \mathbf{D}_{i+1/2,k} \\ \mathbf{F}_{i+1/2,k}^{fin} &= \mathbf{P}_{i+1/2,k}^{fin} - \frac{1}{\Delta t} \mathbf{D}_{i+1/2,k} \end{cases}$$

## 2.2 Usage

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the numerical calculation of the baroclinic continuity equation is performed by the subprogram :

```
subroutine cnuity(m,n)
```

### 2.2.1 Order of operations

The algorithm is based on a consecutive treatment of isopycnic layers. First, the variables necessary to calculate the flux integrals over the vertical coordinate are initialized :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The first calculational step consists of computing the two components of upstream flux in applying (8) :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Then, the diffusive solution is determined :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Following that, the second order flux is added and the anti-diffusive flux is calculated by simply taking the difference between the upstream flux and the second order flux. The second order fluxes are stored in the arrays `uflux(i,j)` and `vflux(i,j)`. Meanwhile, upstream fluxes are tracked in the arrays `uflx(i,j)` and `vflx(i,j)`. Note that the centering in space of the pressure term of equation (9) has been performed in the preceding calculation of the barotropic component of the current (subroutine `barotp`). The numerical values of the thicknesses at the calculational points of the two horizontal components of velocity are found in the global variables `dpu(i,j,k)` and `dpv(i,j,k)`.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The third step decomposes into two parts :

1. Determination of the local extrema of the variable  $\Delta p$ . The results are saved in the arrays `util1(i,j)` and `util2(i,j)` ;
2. Computation of flux correctors following the method outlined above. The results are also stored in the arrays `util1(i,j)` and `util2(i,j)`

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

In a fourth phase, the flux correction given by (17) is determined. The results are stored in variables `utotn(i,j)` and `vtotn(i,j)`.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Then proceed to the inference of a new thickness given by (18).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

From there, it is then possible to determine the second correction to the flux expressed by (20), and to perform the estimation (22) of the thickness of the layer considered. The final values of the fluxes are placed in the arrays `uflx(i,j)` and `vflx(i,j)`.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

For the last step, the adjustment (27) is made.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The treatment of the diffusion term consists of two principal steps :

1. To start, calculate the interfacial diffusive flux given by the form (31), and then correct the new flux with the aid of the expressions given in (35). The results are stored in the arrays `uflx(i,j)` and `vflx(i,j)`.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

## 2.2.2 Flowchart

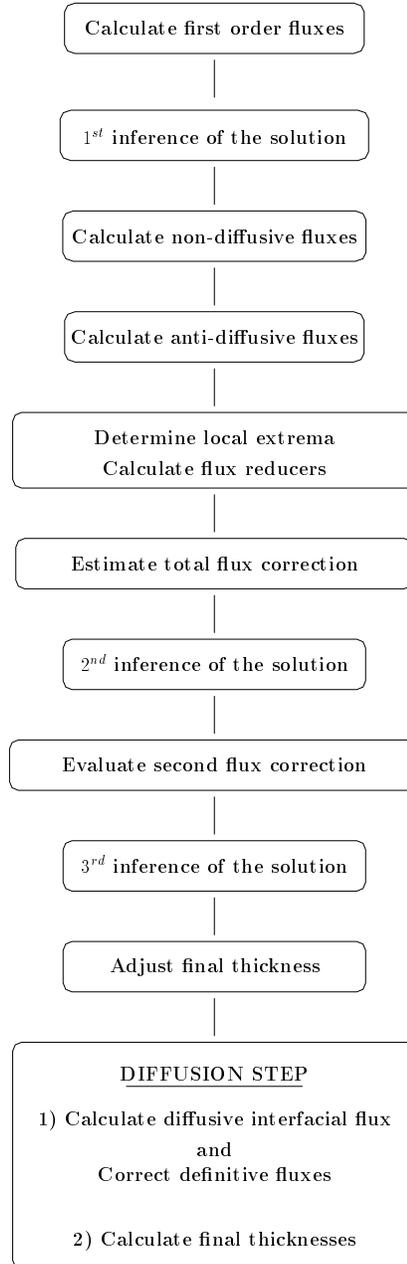


Figure 2: Order of the treatment of the continuity equation for the baroclinic mode in *HYCOM 2.0.01*

## 2.3 Variables

### 2.3.1 Identification

<u>Notation in the theory</u>	<u>Notation in <b>cnuity.f</b></u>
$C_{i+1/2}$	clip
$p'_{b_i} - p'_{i,k}$	flxhi
$p'_{i-1,k} - p'_{b_{i-1}}$	flxlo
$u, v$	utotm(i,j), vtotm(i,j)
$\bar{u}, \bar{v}$	ubavg(i,j,n), vbavg(i,j,n)
$u', v'$	u(i,j,n), v(i,j,n)
$(\Delta p_i^{mid} + \Delta p_{i+1}^{mid}) / 2$	dpu(i,j,k), dpv(i,j,k)

### 2.3.2 Local variables

#### *Subroutine cnuity*

clip	Correction factor for antidiffusive fluxes.
dpgn	Vertical excursion below the mixed layer base.
dpgmin	Minimum layer thicknesses.
dpgmin	Variations in $p'_b$ due to different corrections to the upstream flux.
dpgmn	Minimum layer k thickness.
dpgup	Vertical excursion above the mixed layer base.
dtinv	1/delt1
flxhi, flxlo	Differences in pressure between the interfaces of a layer and the bottom.
i, ia, ib	Array indices.
iflip	Time step selector.
j, ja, jb	Array indices.
k	Layer index.
l	Loop index.

<code>lpipe_cnuity</code>	Flag to compare two model runs.
<code>mask</code>	Comparison mask.
<code>mbdy</code>	Halo extent.
<code>pold</code>	Old pressure.
<code>q</code>	Intermediate variable used in the calculation of the fluxes.
<code>text*12</code>	Comparison title.

## 2.4 Procedures

Subroutines     `cnuity`

### 3 Advection-diffusion : tsadv.c.f

#### 3.1 Formalism and numerical methods

HYCOM uses the same fundamental algorithms for horizontal advection and diffusion that were used by MICOM. When HYCOM is run with isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM mode), horizontal advection/diffusion is performed in the same manner as in MICOM. Temperature and salinity are advected and diffused in layer 1. Only salinity is advected and diffused in deeper layers, with temperature diagnosed from the equation of state to maintain constant density in these layers. When HYCOM is run with hybrid vertical coordinates, the user selects whether temperature and salinity, or just salinity, are advected and diffused within the upper  $n_{hyb}$  layers that the user declares to be hybrid layers. This option was included because the effects of cabbeling when both temperature and salinity are advected and diffused can lead to problems with the adjustment of vertical coordinates by the hybrid coordinate algorithm, particularly if the user selects to flux both temperature and salinity across the moving vertical coordinates (See Section 9). When salinity only is advected/diffused, these problems do not appear, but the tradeoff is that temperature is no longer conserved. In low-resolution simulations of Atlantic Ocean climate, the non-conservation of temperature did not have a large influence on simulated fields.

In isopycnic coordinates, the thermal evolution equation takes the form :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} T \Delta p + \underbrace{\nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u} T \Delta p)}_{advect} + \underbrace{\left( \dot{s} \frac{\partial p}{\partial s} T \right)_{bot} - \left( \dot{s} \frac{\partial p}{\partial s} T \right)_{top}}_{dia-diff} = \underbrace{\nabla \cdot (\nu \Delta p \nabla T)}_{iso-diff} + \mathcal{H}_T. \quad (35)$$

$\Delta p$  is the thickness of layer  $k$  of temperature  $T$ . The radiative exchanges are represented by the term  $\mathcal{H}_T$ . The expression  $(\dot{s} \partial p / \partial s)$  represents a vertical mass flux.

In HYCOM, the problem of advection of heat and salt is treated by MPDATA coming from the work of Smolarkiewicz & Clark (1986) and Smolarkiewicz & Grabowski (1990). The diapycnic diffusion is accounted for in the diapycnic mixing algorithm described in Section 14. Regarding the isopycnic diffusion, the numerical method used is based on the different procedures commented on in Section 3.1.3.

##### 3.1.1 Maintaining the positivity of thickness

Consider the simple form of the problem of advection of an isopycnic layer of thickness  $\Delta p$ , of temperature  $T$  and driven by a horizontal velocity  $\mathbf{u}$  :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} T \Delta p + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u} T \Delta p) = 0 \quad (36)$$

From the solution of the continuity equation, for each layer, the mass flows  $(u\Delta p)_{i,j}^{n+1}$  and  $(v\Delta p)_{i,j}^{n+1}$  as well as a diagnostic value for  $\Delta p_{i,j}^{n+1}$  are calculated. Let  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{u}\Delta p$  and let  $h$  be the thickness of the layer of interest. Considering the conservation equation :

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{P} = 0 \quad (37)$$

and determining the variation  $\delta h$  follows from this form, we have :

$$\delta h(i, j) = -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} [Px_{i+1,j}^{n+1} - Px_{i,j}^{n+1} + Py_{i,j+1}^{n+1} - Py_{i,j}^{n+1}] \quad (38)$$

Suppose the layer shrinks with time, *i.e.*,  $\delta h < 0$ . In this case,  $|\delta h| > \Delta p^{n-1}$  brings about the unsatisfactory condition  $\Delta p^{n+1} < 0$ . The fluxes resulting from the numerical treatment of the continuity equation are then inconsistent with the variations of thickness calculated in this same step. The mass flux as well as the layer thickness are necessary in the advection calculation. The mass fluxes are made to be consistent with the variation of layer thickness so that always in the case where  $\delta h < 0$ , then  $|\delta h| \leq \Delta p^{n-1}$ . Introduce the two utility thicknesses  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  :

$$h_1 = 1/2(\Delta p^{n+1} + \Delta p^{n-1} + \delta h) \quad ; \quad h_2 = 1/2(\Delta p^{n+1} + \Delta p^{n-1} - \delta h) \quad (39)$$

In the case where the fluxes are strictly consistent (*i.e.* :  $\delta h = \Delta p^{n+1} - \Delta p^{n-1}$ ) :

$$h_1 = \Delta p^{n-1} \quad \text{and} \quad h_2 = \Delta p^{n+1}$$

When the flux is consistent, the utility thicknesses given by (39) are introduced. Otherwise, when the fluxes are inconsistent, the positivity of the layer thicknesses is maintained by setting :

$$h_1 = -\delta h \quad \text{and} \quad h_2 = 0.$$

For  $\delta h > 0$ , the respective values of  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are obtained with identical reasoning.

### 3.1.2 Treatment of the tendency term

To assure a gradual transition of  $\Delta p$  towards a null value, the finite difference expression of the tendency term in equation (35) that is generally written in the form :

$$\frac{T^{new}\Delta p^{new} - T^{old}\Delta p^{old}}{\Delta t}$$

is replaced by :

$$\frac{T^{new}(\Delta p^{new} + \epsilon) - T^{old}(\Delta p^{old} + \epsilon)}{\Delta t}. \quad (40)$$

The small parameter  $\epsilon$  will be non-zero when the loss of mass during a time step averages at least 90% of the previous value. More precisely :

$$\epsilon = A + (\epsilon_1^2 + A^2)^{1/2} \quad (41)$$

where  $A = (0.1\Delta p^{old} - \Delta p^{new})/2$ . The intermediate parameter  $\epsilon_1$  is therefore fixed to the numerical value of 10 *cm*, introduced to assure the validity of (40) when  $\Delta p^{old}$  and  $\Delta p^{new}$  are tending toward zero.

### 3.1.3 Treatment of the diffusion term

As in finite differences, the product  $\nu\partial T/\partial x$  is numerically equivalent to  $u_d\delta T$  (where  $\delta T$  represents the temperature difference between the two adjacent mesh points bracketing  $u_d$ ). Bleck *et al.* (1992) introduce a diffusion velocity  $u_d \equiv \nu/\Delta x$  (where  $\Delta x$  is the size of the mesh) to simulate the isopycnic mixing. Typically,  $u_d = 1$  *cm/s* for the variables  $T$  and  $S$ . On the other hand, in the flux expression appearing in the diffusion term, the variation  $\Delta p$  is replaced by the harmonic average :

$$\widetilde{\Delta p} = \frac{2}{\Delta p_{i-1}^{-1} + \Delta p_i^{-1}} \quad (42)$$

The reasoning for this choice is not obvious. It can be found in Bleck *et al.* (1992). One can also understand it in the following way: Consider two neighboring mesh points to which are associated the two values  $\Delta p_{i-1}$  and  $\Delta p_i$  and the two temperatures  $T_{i-1}$  and  $T_i$ . In order for the introduction of the factor  $\widetilde{\Delta p}$  in the flow expression not to have any effect, substitute a neutral value  $\widetilde{\Delta p}$  that characterizes a neutral state. In this neutral context, two neighboring mesh points have the same amount of heat  $Q$  and an average temperature  $\widetilde{T}$ . If the turbulence and therefore the turbulent diffusion are interpreted as a mixing process, then :  $\widetilde{T} = (T_{i-1} + T_i)/2$ . Of course the neutral state does not have the same thermal content  $Q$ . Therefore :

$$\widetilde{T} = \frac{Q}{\widetilde{\Delta p}} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{Q}{\Delta p_{i-1}} + \frac{Q}{\Delta p_i} \right) \quad (43)$$

an identity which led to the form (42). More over, as the inference of the new value  $T_{i,j}^n$  requires a division by  $\Delta p$ , to treat the situations  $\Delta p \rightarrow 0$ , a residual thickness given the fixed numerical value of 1 *mm* is introduced.

### 3.1.4 Filtering

In the classical manner, to compensate for dispersion problems caused by the leapfrog scheme, Asselin filtering is used :

$$\widehat{T}^n \widehat{\Delta p}^n = \left[ T^n (1 - 2\gamma) \Delta p^n + \gamma \left( \widehat{T}^{n-1} \widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} + T^{n+1} \Delta p^{n+1} \right) \right] \quad (44)$$

So that this form remains valid when  $\Delta p \rightarrow 0$ , a residual thickness  $\epsilon$  is introduced such that :

$$\widehat{T}^n = \left( \widehat{\Delta p}^n + \epsilon \right)^{-1} \left[ T^n \{ (1 - 2\gamma) \Delta p^n + \epsilon \} + \gamma \left( \widehat{T}^{n-1} \widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} + T^{n+1} \Delta p^{n+1} \right) \right] \quad (45)$$

In application,  $\epsilon$  takes a numerical value equivalent to  $10^{-3} m$ . Concerning the thermodynamic variables, the value  $\gamma = 0.015625$  is used. Moreover, in the code, the filtering is carried out in two steps. All things considered :

$$[\widehat{T\delta p}]^n = T^n \{(1 - 2\gamma)\Delta p^n + \epsilon\} + \gamma\widehat{T}^{n-1}\widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} \quad (46)$$

Then, after having calculated  $T^{n+1}$  and filtering the layer thickness  $\Delta p$  by the formula :

$$\widehat{\Delta p}^n = (1 - 2\gamma)\Delta p^n + \gamma\left(\widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} + \Delta p^{n+1}\right) \quad (47)$$

the second step is written :

$$\widehat{T}^n = \left(\widehat{\Delta p}^n + \epsilon\right)^{-1} \left\{[\widehat{T\delta p}]^n + \gamma T^{n+1}\Delta p^{n+1}\right\} \quad (48)$$

### 3.2 Usage

In the code of HYCOM 2.0.01, the numerical calculation of the horizontal equations of advection-diffusion of heat and salt is realized by the subroutine :

```
subroutine tsadvc (m,n)
```

Concerning the mixed layer, the variables treated are the specific volume indicated by the variable `thmix(i,j,n)` and the salinity `saln(i,j,1)`.

#### 3.2.1 Order of operations

Concerning the mixed layer, the components  $Px$  and  $Py$  of mass flux are smoothed over three points. The results are put in the arrays `uflux(i,j)` and `vflux(i,j)`. Following this, for each computational point, the first phase of the filtering is performed following the formula (46) and the procedure verifying the coherence of the mass fluxes with the variation of thickness of the surface layer is started. The variables  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  correspond to the arrays `util1(i,j)` and `util2(i,j)`.

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

Then, the advection of the mixed layer characteristics is realized by the instructions :

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

After having filtered the layer thicknesses by the formula (47), the double step of filtering given by the relation (48) is executed. The negative characteristics are then ready to be diagnosed.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

It remains to calculate the neutral thickness for the mesh by accounting for the effect of diffusion over the mixed layer characteristics :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Concerning the isopycnic layers, the order of operations is identical to that described for the mixed layer except for the fact that only the salinity is advected, then diffused. HYCOM 2.0.01 is designed to treat in parallel any tracer problem :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### 3.2.2 Flowchart

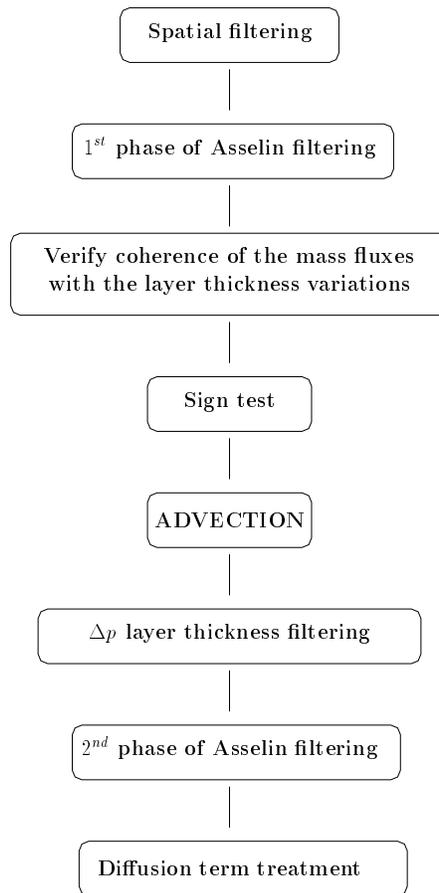


Figure 3: *Order of transport and horizontal diffusion calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01*

## 3.3 Variables

### 3.3.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

$\widetilde{\Delta p}$

$\delta h$

$h_1, h_2$

Notation in `tsadv.c.f`

factor

flxdiv

util1(i, j), util2(i, j)

$\gamma, (1 - 2\gamma)$  wts2, wts1

### 3.3.2 Local variables

*Subroutine tsadv*

a, b	First and argument (respectively) to <i>harmon</i> .
baclin5	5*baclin.
factor	Intermediate variable in the diffusion term calculation.
flxdiv	Variation of thickness $\delta h$ due to the divergence of momentum flux.
harmon	Harmonic mean.
i, j	Array indices.
ia, ib, ja, jb	Loop counters.
k	Layer index.
l	Loop index.
latemp	Advect temperature flag.
lath3d	Advect density flag.
lpipe_tsadv	Flag to compare two model runs.
m, n	Time step indices.
mbdy	Halo extent.
offset	Intermediate variable in the calculation of $h_1$ and $h_2$ .
pdtemp	Temperature advection offset.
pdth3d	Density advection offset.
pmid, pnew, pold	Intermediate pressures.
posdef	Reference value of the specific volume in the mixed layer.
smaxx, sminn	Intermediate salinities.
sold	Old salinity.
text	Comparison title.

tmaxx, tminn	Intermediate temperatures.
told	Old temperature.
wts2dp	wts2/layer thickness.
xmax(2*kdm)	Maximums.
xmin(2*kdm)	Minimums.

### 3.4 Procedures

Functions	harmon?????
Subroutines	advem

### 3.5 The SMOLARKIEWICZ MPDATA

#### 3.5.1 Formalism

The formalism used by Bleck to treat the problem of advection of a non-negative quantity  $\psi$  in HYCOM is very similar to that used by Smolarkiewicz in MPDATA (Smolarkiewicz & Clark, 1986 and Smolarkiewicz & Grabowski, 1990). In a bidimensional form, the general equation in conservation form can be written :

$$\frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} = 0 \quad (49)$$

where  $(F, G) = (u\psi, v\psi)$  represent the fluxes of the quantity  $\psi$  in the two directions  $x, y$ .  $f$  is an arbitrary positive function. To preserve the sign of  $\psi$ , we approximate the form (49) with a donor-cell scheme. In the first approximation, the upstream flux as well as the components of the velocity are defined at the interfaces between the cells. This flux can be generally expressed :

$$F_{i+1/2,j}^{up} = \frac{u_{i+1/2} + |u_{i+1/2}|}{2} \psi_{i,j} + \frac{u_{i+1/2} - |u_{i+1/2}|}{2} \psi_{i+1,j} \quad (50)$$

which, on introducing the two operators :

$$\bar{\psi}^x = (\psi_{i,j} + \psi_{i+1,j})/2 \quad \text{et} \quad \delta_x \psi = (\psi_{i+1,j} - \psi_{i,j})/\Delta x$$

then condenses to the form :

$$F^{up} = u\bar{\psi}^x - \frac{|u|\Delta x}{2} \delta_x \psi \quad (51)$$

Starting from the standard Taylor expansion :

$$\phi_{i\pm 1/2,j} = \phi_{i,j} \pm \frac{\Delta x}{2} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} + \frac{\Delta x^2}{8} \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + O(\Delta x^3)$$

where  $\phi$  is a variable such that :

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\phi}^x &= \phi + O(\Delta x^2) \\ \delta_x \phi &= \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} + O(\Delta x^2).\end{aligned}$$

The introduction of the forms in (50) lead to :

$$\delta_x F^{up} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ u[\psi + O(\Delta x^2)] - \frac{|u|\Delta x}{2} \left[ \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} + O(\Delta x^2) \right] \right] \quad (52)$$

Similarly, expanding in a Taylor series in the time step allows the identity :

$$\frac{(f\psi)^{n+1} - (f\psi)^n}{\Delta t} \equiv \delta_t f\psi = \frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f\psi}{\partial t^2} + O(\Delta t^2)$$

Taking into account (49), the second derivative of the last term can be expressed as a function of spatial derivatives :

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial^2 f\psi}{\partial t^2} &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right] \\ &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{u}{f} \frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{v}{f} \frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \frac{u}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \frac{v}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right].\end{aligned}$$

which gives :

$$\delta_t f\psi = \frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\Delta t}{2} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \frac{u}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \frac{v}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right] \right\} + O(\Delta t^2) \quad (53)$$

In combining (52) and (53), the following is obtained :

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_t f\psi + \delta_x F^{up} + \delta_y G^{up} &= \frac{\partial f\psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \\ &\quad + \frac{\Delta t}{2} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \frac{u}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \frac{v}{f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \right] \right\} \\ &\quad - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ \frac{|u|\Delta x}{2} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \right] - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ \frac{|v|\Delta y}{2} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} \right] + O(\Delta t^2, \Delta x^2, \Delta y^2)\end{aligned}$$

The essence of the MPDATA scheme is to correct truncation errors of the forward-upstream scheme by introducing the divergence of the anti-diffusive fluxes :

$$\begin{aligned}F^{anti} &= \frac{|u|\Delta x}{2} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} - \frac{u\Delta t}{2f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right) \\ G^{anti} &= \frac{|v|\Delta y}{2} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} - \frac{v\Delta t}{2f} \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \right)\end{aligned} \quad (54)$$

and to ameliorate the precision of the initial scheme in resolving (49) with the form :

$$\delta_t f \psi = -(\delta_x F^{up} + \delta_y G^{up}) - (\delta_x F^{anti} + \delta_y G^{anti}). \quad (55)$$

In the numerical calculations, the final solution is evaluated in two steps :

1. Determination of the upstream fluxes  $F^{up}$  and  $G^{up}$  and approximation of the transported but diffused solution  $\psi^{up}$ ;
2. Establishment of the anti-diffusive fluxes. At this phase, the positivity is assured by submitting the fluxes  $F^{anti}$  and  $G^{anti}$  to a procedure of flux reduction identical to the one implemented in the algorithm of Flux Corrected Transport (*cf.* § 2.1.1). Since a C grid is used to spatially discretize the different variables, this step requires spatially-centered finite differences when approximating the anti-diffusive fluxes given by (54). So,

$$F_c^{up}(i, j) = \frac{1}{2} u(i, j) [\psi^{up}(i-1, j) + \psi^{up}(i, j)] \quad (56)$$

$$G_c^{up}(i, j) = \frac{1}{2} v(i, j) [\psi^{up}(i, j-1) + \psi^{up}(i, j)]$$

then :

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \equiv \frac{1}{\Delta x} [F_c^{up}(i+1, j) + F_c^{up}(i, j)] \quad (57)$$

$$\frac{\partial G}{\partial y} \equiv \frac{1}{\Delta y} [G_c^{up}(i, j+1) + G_c^{up}(i, j)]$$

Putting  $Div\mathcal{F} = \partial F/\partial x + \partial G/\partial y$  and setting  $f = 1$  :

$$F_c^{anti} = \frac{1}{2} |u(i, j)| [\psi^{up}(i, j) - \psi^{up}(i-1, j)] - \frac{\Delta t}{4} u(i, j) [Div\mathcal{F}(i-1, j) + Div\mathcal{F}(i, j)] \quad (58)$$

$$G_c^{anti} = \frac{1}{2} |v(i, j)| [\psi^{up}(i, j) - \psi^{up}(i, j-1)] - \frac{\Delta t}{4} v(i, j) [Div\mathcal{F}(i, j-1) + Div\mathcal{F}(i, j)]$$

### 3.5.2 Usage

The usage of the third order numerical scheme for advection of heat and salt, based on the work of Smolarkiewicz & Clark (1986) and Smolarkiewicz & Grabowski (1990), is implemented in the subroutine :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The transported variable is `fld`. The arguments  $u$  and  $v$  represent the mass fluxes  $u\Delta p$  and  $v\Delta p$ . Their numerical values come from solution of the continuity equation. The two arguments `fco` and `fc` correspond to the two utility thicknesses  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  of the layer considered, as understood in § 3.1.1. They are needed in the subroutine to be able to apply the form (40) and therefore to determine  $\psi^{up}$  from which the finite-difference expressions for the anti-diffusive fluxes are eventually calculated. For `iord` = 1, the numerical scheme returns a simple donor-cell. When the transport variable `fld` is worked out using the quantities  $u\Delta p$  and  $v\Delta p$  and not using the characteristics  $u$  and  $v$  of the velocity field, the calculation of a divergence of the anti-diffusive fluxes centered in time implies also storing the numerical values of the fluxes obtained by (58) with the quantities of average thickness :

$$\overline{\Delta p} = [h_1(i, j, n - 1) + h_2(i, j, n - 1) + h_1(i, j, n) + h_2(i, j, n)] / 4 \quad (59)$$

### 3.5.3 Order of operations

The algorithm includes a preliminary step which consists of determining one part, the local extrema, and another part, the fluxes  $F^{up}$  and  $G^{up}$  according to the upstream method.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The following step returns an estimate of the divergence of the flux and enforces monotonicity. In this first phase of inferring a new value of the variable `fld` from the form (40), the parameter  $\epsilon$  is introduced as defined in § 3.1.2.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Next comes the calculation of the anti-diffusive fluxes with the evaluation of the fluxes  $F_c^{up}$  and  $G_c^{up}$  from the expressions given by (56). An estimation of the fluxes  $F_c^{anti}$  and  $G_c^{anti}$  is generated by (58). The results are stored in the arrays `flx(i,j)` and `fly(i,j)`.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The numerical values obtained are then subjected to the flux reduction method.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The last operation consists of calculating the divergence of these fluxes from which the final value of the transported variable is obtained taking into account, again, the expression (40).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

## Flowchart

### 3.5.4 Flowchart

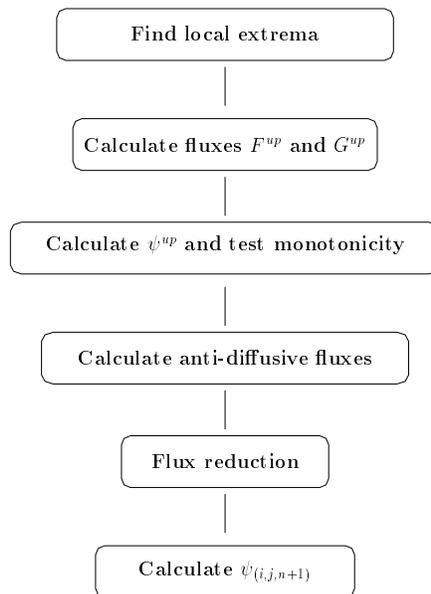


Figure 4: *Order of horizontal transport calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01*

**3.5.5 Variables****Identification**

<u>Notation in the theory</u>	<u>Notation in <b>advem.f</b></u>
$T, S$	fld(i, j)
$\epsilon$	?????
$h_1, h_2$	fco(i, j), fc(i, j)
$F, G$	flx(i, j), fly(i, j)
$Div\mathcal{F}$	flxdiv(i, j)
$u\Delta p, v\Delta p$	u(i, j), v(i, j)
$1/\Delta x$	scali(i)

The different arrays that store the intermediate results are introduced by the statement :

```
common/work/fmx(idm,jdm), fmn(idm,jdm), flp(idm,jdm), fln(idm,jdm),
flx(idm,jdm), fly(idm,jdm), flxdiv(idm,jdm)
```

**Local variables***Subroutine advem*

amount	Limited flux.
clip	Total clipped amount.
dt	Temporal increment.
fco(i, j), fc(i, j)	Depth of layer at previous and new time step.
fld(i, j)	Constituent.
fln(i, j), flp(i, j)	Flux reduction factors.
flx(i, j), fly(i, j)	Flux of constituent in each direction $x$ and $y$ .
flxdiv	Flux change.
fmn(i, j), fmx(i, j)	Extrema of fld in a nearby neighborhood.
i, ia, ib	Array indices.
iord	Order of scheme (1 or 2, 1 for simple donor cell scheme).
j, ja, jb	Array indices.

<code>l</code>	Loop index.
<code>lpipe_advem</code>	Flag to compare two model runs.
<code>mbdy_a</code>	Halo extent.
<code>onemu</code>	Small pressure.
<code>q</code>	Flux.
<code>scal(i)</code>	Spatial increments squared.
<code>scali(i)</code>	Inverse of scal.
<code>u1</code>	U-flux.
<code>u(i,j), v(i,j)</code>	Mass fluxes satisfying continuity equation.
<code>util1, util2</code>	Work array.
<code>v1</code>	V-flux.
<code>vlume</code>	Total volume.

## 4 Momentum Equation : momtum.f

In an isopycnic system, the momentum conservation equation is of the form :

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \nabla \frac{\mathbf{u}^2}{2} + (\zeta + f) \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{u} = -\nabla M - g \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\tau}}{\partial p} \quad (60)$$

with :

- $\zeta$  : Relative vorticity
- $\mathbf{k}$  : Vertical unit vector
- $M$  : Montgomery potential
- $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  : Reynolds stress
- $f$  : Coriolis parameter

The subroutine `momtum` computes the following forcing terms of the momentum equation (60) :

1. the Montgomery potential;
2. the surface wind effects;
3. the bottom drag.

### 4.1 Forcing

#### 4.1.1 Montgomery potential

To the initial distribution (figure 5), in HYCOM 2.0.01, the surface condition  $p_1^{init} = 0$  is added. The portion of the ocean represented is at rest and the effects of the atmospheric pressure gradient are neglected. If, theoretically, the Montgomery potential is expressed in the general form  $M = p + \rho g z$ , it is not self-explanatory. However, a clear physical interpretation comes from letting  $\Pi_k$  be the potential that represents, along the vertical, the pressure deficit caused by the fact that the water column above the considered layer  $k$  has a density that is different from the one of this layer. The hydrostatic hypothesis is assumed. Over the initial profile, for the layer  $k$ , the pressure deficit is expressed by the recurrence relation :

$$\Pi_{k+1} = \Pi_k - g(\rho_{k+1} - \rho_k) \sum_{i=1}^k \langle h_i \rangle \quad (61)$$

As an initial condition,  $\Pi_1 = 0$ . In the bottom layer, where the density goes to  $\rho_N$ ,  $\Pi_N$  is obtained by this relation.

When this stratified ocean is in motion, the height of the total column of water, not greater than  $H$ , is  $D$  such that :

$$D = \sum_{k=1}^N h_k \quad (62)$$

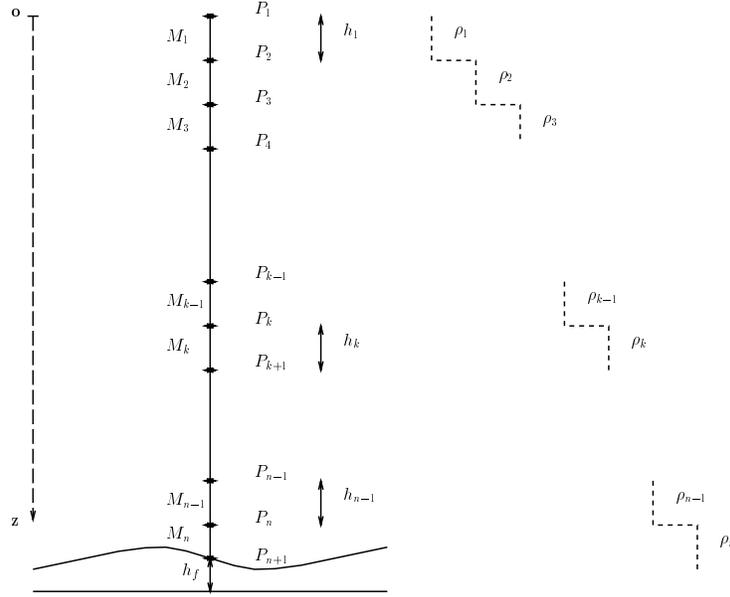


Figure 5: *Initial vertical distribution of pressure, density, and Montgomery potential*

In the moving ocean, the Montgomery potential  $M$  is equivalent to the potential  $\Pi$  established by the initial state. So the Montgomery potential in layer  $k$  is given by the recurrence relation :

$$M_k = M_{k+1} + g(\rho_{k+1} - \rho_k) \sum_{i=1}^k h_k \quad (63)$$

As  $\eta$  is independent of the layer  $K$ :

$$M_k = M_{k+1} + g(1 + \eta)(\rho_{k+1} - \rho_k) \sum_{i=1}^k h'_k \quad (64)$$

To connect the potential  $\Pi_k$  to the Montgomery potential  $M_k$  present in the baroclinic momentum equations (*cf.* § 4.2), start at the bottom. Assume a homogeneous ocean of density  $\rho_N$ . At rest, the bottom pressure is  $\pi_b = g\rho_N H$ . When the ocean is moving this pressure becomes  $\pi_b = g\rho_N D$ . Because of this movement, the ocean bottom experiences a pressure deficit which is :

$$\delta\pi_b = -g\rho_N(D - H) \quad (65)$$

Since the decomposition (1) was used, the potential is therefore written :

$$\delta\pi_b = -g\eta\rho_N H \quad (66)$$

The potential  $\Pi_N$  reflects the pressure deficit at the bottom in an ocean where the density evolves from  $\rho_1$  in the surface layer to  $\rho_N$  in the bottom layer. To obtain the baroclinic Montgomery potential, the pressure deficit at the bottom must be considered. It experiences a homogeneous ocean of instantaneous height  $D = (1 + \eta)H$  and of density  $\rho_1$  :

$$\delta' \pi_b = -g\eta\rho_1 H \quad (67)$$

The general form giving the Montgomery potential at the bottom is finally obtained :

$$M_N = \Pi_N - g\eta H(\rho_N + \rho_1) \quad (68)$$

Once the potential  $M_N$  is calculated, the form (63) is applied to obtain the potential  $M_k$  of each layer up to the surface. In fact, in HYCOM 2.0.01, the surface layer is a mixed layer where the density  $\rho_s$  varies with time. Now, in the preceding calculations, a constant value  $\rho_1$  serves to represent the surface density. To express the Montgomery potential for the mixed layer, this particularity needs to be considered. So, using the recurrence relation (63), write :

$$M_1 = M_2 + g(\rho_2 - \rho_s)h_1 \quad (69)$$

Then :

$$M_1^{fin} = M_1 + h_1 [(\rho_s - \rho_1) - (\rho_2 - \rho_1)] \quad (70)$$

For the other part, if the sum over the  $N$  layers of the decomposition (1) is expressed using the form :  $p_b = p'_b + p''_b$  where :

$$p''_b = \eta \sum_{k=1}^N \Delta p'_k = \eta p'_b, \quad (71)$$

the new report of the perturbation  $\eta$  to the reference ocean can be calculated in time by the relation :

$$\eta = \frac{p''_b}{p'_b} \quad (72)$$

#### 4.1.2 Bottom drag

In HYCOM 2.0.01, to model dissipation by bottom drag, the following quadratic form is introduced :

$$\tau_b = C_D |\bar{\mathbf{u}}_b| \bar{\mathbf{u}}_b \quad (73)$$

$C_D$  is a drag coefficient. In version 2.0.01 of HYCOM,  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}_b$  represents the average velocity in a slice of water of thickness  $\delta z$  situated just above the bottom. Set  $\delta z = 10 \text{ m}$ . For the case when the thickness of layer  $N$  is less than the fixed value  $\delta z$ , it is necessary to use an average (the sum of the thicknesses of layers  $N, N - 1, \dots, k$ ) :

$$\bar{\mathbf{u}}_b = \frac{1}{\delta z} \left( \sum_{l=N}^k \mathbf{u}'_l h'_l + \mathbf{u}'_{k-1} \delta h'_{k-1} \right) \quad (74)$$

with :

$$\delta z = \sum_{l=N}^k h'_l + \delta h'_{k-1} \quad (75)$$

and put :

$$\bar{\mathbf{u}}_b = \bar{\mathbf{u}} + \bar{\mathbf{u}}'_b \quad (76)$$

So that the drag remains always significant, a residual velocity  $\bar{c}$  is introduced and the following expression is calculated :

$$\mathcal{D}_{i,j} = C_D \left( \sqrt{\bar{u}_b^2 + \bar{v}_b^2} + \bar{c} \right) \quad (77)$$

In HYCOM 2.0.01,  $\bar{c} = 10 \text{ cm/s}$  and  $C_D = 3 \times 10^{-3}$ . The vertical divergence of the bottom-induced stress is calculated as :

$$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\tau}_b}{\partial p} = \begin{cases} \frac{\partial \tau_{bx}}{\partial p} \\ \frac{\partial \tau_{by}}{\partial p} \end{cases} \quad (78)$$

Only the momentum in layers with indices  $N, N-1, \dots, k$  situated in the  $\delta z$  slice of water feels the dissipation term. Moreover, assume that the drag stress varies linearly inside each layer. So, if the bottom layer thickness is strictly equal to  $\delta z$  :

$$\left( \frac{\partial \tau_{bx}}{\partial p} \right)_{i,j} = \frac{1}{2} u_{i,j,N} (\mathcal{D}_{i,j} + \mathcal{D}_{i-1,j}) / \delta z \quad (79)$$

On the other hand, when the bottom layer thickness is greater than  $\delta z$ , the fact that only a fraction of layer  $N$  feels the dissipation must be considered. So,

$$\left( \frac{\partial \tau_{bx}}{\partial p} \right)'_{i,j} = \left( \frac{\partial \tau_{bx}}{\partial p} \right)_{i,j} \frac{\delta z}{\Delta p'_{i,j,N}} \quad (80)$$

If the dissipation layer is made up of more layers, apply similar reasoning to distribute the dissipation over the  $N_f$  layers concerned.

#### 4.1.3 Influence of the wind

In HYCOM 2.0.01, to model the surface mechanical effect of the wind, the monthly climatological files of wind stress  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_s$ , are used to interpolate the values during the simulation with the aid of the coefficients  $w0, w1, w2, w3$ .

## 4.2 Baroclinic System

To use the barotropic-baroclinic splitting of motion given by the form (2), once the system (94) describing the behavior of the barotropic mode is established, by simple subtraction from the general system (60), the baroclinic system is obtained (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995) :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u'_k}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial(u_k^2 + v_k^2)}{\partial x} - (\zeta_k + f)v'_i - \zeta_k \bar{v} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ M_k - \frac{1}{\rho_r}(\eta p'_b) \right] &= -\frac{\partial \bar{u}^*}{\partial t} \\ \frac{\partial v'_k}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial(u_k^2 + v_k^2)}{\partial y} - (\zeta_k - f)u'_i - \zeta_k \bar{u} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left[ M_k - \frac{1}{\rho_r}(\eta p'_b) \right] &= -\frac{\partial \bar{v}^*}{\partial t} \end{aligned} \quad (81)$$

The index  $k$  represents the range of the isopycnic layer considered.

### 4.2.1 Numerical scheme

A leapfrog numerical scheme is used.

### 4.2.2 Turbulent viscosity

Though the nonlinear terms present in the momentum conservation equations of system (81) will not be called to play a significant role in ocean-scale applications, the equations are expressed in their complete form. The horizontal turbulent viscosity is defined by the relation :

$$\nu_u = \max \{ u_d \Delta x, \lambda \left[ \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2} \Delta x^2 \} \quad (82)$$

$u_d$  is a bottom diffusion velocity and  $\lambda$  a constant. In HYCOM 2.0.01,  $u_d = 2 \text{ cm/s}$  and  $\lambda = 1$ .

### 4.2.3 Turbulent momentum flux

To the general equations given by the system (81), a diffusion term of the general form  $(\Delta p)^{-1} \nabla \cdot (\nu_u \Delta p \nabla \mathbf{u})$  is added. Similarly, to the flux term  $\nu_T \Delta p \nabla T$  appearing in the heat conservation equation (*cf.* § 3), the pressure increment  $\Delta p$  present in the momentum flux expression is replaced by the harmonic average  $\widetilde{\Delta p} = 2/(\Delta p_{i-1}^{-1} + \Delta p_i^{-1})$  (*cf.* § 3.1.3). Moreover, writing this term in finite differences necessitates taking into account the possible presence of elevated bottom in neighboring cells. So, near partial boundaries, ( $0 < w_{N,S,E,W} < 1$ ), (*cf.* § 4.2.5), the turbulent flux results from the sum :

1. of flux pertaining to the portion of the cell boundary facing bathymetry; this flux is subject to the boundary condition ( $s_L \pm 1$ ) ;
2. of flux relating to the open part of the cell.

#### 4.2.4 Intersection with the bathymetry

When an isocline intersects the bathymetry, a computational point of the Montgomery potential is then situated outside of the “wet” volume. In this case, in HYCOM 2.0.01, the gradient of the Montgomery potential is calculated by the weighted average values of four points of the neighboring grid  $(i', j') = (i \pm 1, j), (i, j \pm 1)$  (Bleck & Smith, 1990) :

$$\left(\frac{\partial \widetilde{M}}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j,k} = \left[ \sum_{i',j',k} \tilde{w}_{i',j',k} \left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial x}\right)_{i',j',k} \right] / \sum_{i',j'} \tilde{w}_{i',j',k} \quad (83)$$

The coefficients  $\tilde{w}_{i',j',k}$  are defined by the formulae :

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{w}_{i\pm 1,j,k} &= \min(H_1, \Delta p'_{b_{i\pm 1,j,k}}, \Delta p'_{s_{i\pm 1,j,k}}) \\ \tilde{w}_{i,j\pm 1,k} &= \min(H_1, \Delta p'_{b_{i,j\pm 1,k}}, \Delta p'_{s_{i,j\pm 1,k}}) \end{aligned} \quad (84)$$

with :

$$\Delta p'_{b_{i,j,k}} = p'_{b_{i,j}} - p'_{i,j,k} \quad \text{et} \quad \Delta p'_{s_{i,j,k}} = p'_{i,j,k+1} - p'_{s_{i,j}} \quad (85)$$

$H_1$  is the thickness given by weighting (83) of the Montgomery potential. For ocean applications, typically  $H_1 = 10 \text{ m}$ . Writing the coefficients  $\tilde{w}_{i',j',k}$  allows simultaneous treatment of the problems of intersection of interfaces with the bathymetry and that of the outcropping of interfaces with the surface. In fact, since HYCOM 2.0.01 uses a surface mixed layer, it requires the mechanism of outcropping of isopycnic layers into the mixed layer to be modelled. Therefore, set  $p'_{s_{i,j}} = p'_{i,j,2}$ . To avoid discontinuities, the following quantity is introduced :

$$\left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j,k}^{fin} = \left[ \left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j,k} + (H_1 - \tilde{w}_{i,j,k}) \left(\frac{\partial \widetilde{M}}{\partial x}\right)_{i,j,k} \right] / H_1 \quad (86)$$

#### 4.2.5 Boundary conditions

In the presence of a solid boundary, two types of physical boundary conditions are introduced :

1. slip conditon :  $\partial u_s / \partial \pi = 0$  ;
2. no-slip conditon :  $u_s = 0$ .

$u_s$  is the velocity component tangential to the boundary and  $\pi$  is the normal direction. Suppose a domain is bounded by land to the East. In a point of  $(i, j, k)$  coordinates, to obtain an indication of the presence of this solid boundary, calculate the quantity :

$$w_{E_{i,j,k}} = \max \left\{ 0, \min \left[ 1, \frac{p'_{i,j,k+1} - p'_{b_{i,j+1}}}{\max(p'_{i,j,k+1} - p'_{i,j,k}, \epsilon)} \right] \right\} \quad (87)$$

$\epsilon$  is used in the denominator of this expression to avoid division by zero. Three cases arise (*cf.* figure 8) :

1.  $w_E = 1$  if the layer  $k$  intersects the bathymetry ;
2.  $w_E = 0$  if it does not intersect the bathymetry ;
3.  $0 < w_E < 1$  if only one part of the layer intersects the jump in the bathymetry existing between the grid points  $(i, j)$  and  $(i, j + 1)$ .

Introducing the variable  $s_L$  to represent the boundary condition chosen :

- a)  $s_L = 1$  : slip ;
- b)  $s_L = -1$  : no-slip

If a solid boundary is detected, it is then possible to express the particular behavior of the fluid in the immediate surroundings of the boundary by establishing the auxiliary velocity :

$$u_{E_{i,j,k}} = (1 - w_{E_{i,j,k}})u_{i,j,k} + w_{E_{i,j,k}}u_{i,j,k}s_L \quad (88)$$

So if an Eastern boundary is detected ( $w_E=1$ ),

- a) if  $s_L = 1$  :  $u_{E_{i,j,k}} = u_{i,j,k}$  ;
- b) if  $s_L = -1$  :  $u_{E_{i,j,k}} = -u_{i,j,k}$

For each layer  $k$  and at each point  $(i, j)$ , the four coefficients  $w_N, w_S, w_E, w_W$  that represent the presence of boundaries respectively to the North, South, East and West of the domain are calculated. These variables establish the auxiliary velocity field  $u_N, u_S, u_E, u_W$ . This procedure remains valid as well for the case of a partial boundary ( $0 < w_E < 1$ ).

#### 4.2.6 Vorticity

In the formalism of HYCOM, the nonlinear terms and the Coriolis term are grouped to make the vorticity appear as ( $\zeta = \partial v / \partial x - \partial u / \partial y$ ) :

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} + f \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{u} = \nabla \frac{\mathbf{u}^2}{2} + (\zeta + f) \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{u} \quad (89)$$

To conserve entropy, the components of the vorticity term  $(\zeta + f) \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{u}$  are written in the difference forms :

$$\begin{aligned} -v(\zeta + f) &= -\overline{V}^{x,y} \overline{Q}^y \\ u(\zeta + f) &= -\overline{U}^{x,y} \overline{Q}^x \end{aligned} \quad (90)$$

where the mass flux  $(U, V) = u \Delta \overline{p}^x, v \Delta \overline{p}^y$  and the potential vorticity  $Q = (\zeta + f) / \Delta \overline{p}^{x,y}$  are introduced. The operator  $(\overline{\quad})$  permits the recentering of differences of pressure at

computational points of the velocity components on a C grid. In an isopycnic shallow-water model, there is no guarantee that the instantaneous thickness of the considered layer remains non-zero. To address this problem, Bleck & Smith (1990) developed the “one-eighths rule” method. It remedies abnormal situations which arise when certain layer thickness values vanish. Before estimating the potential vorticity field  $Q_{i,j,k}$ , the sum of two larger values of the variable  $\Delta p$  among the 4 points surrounding the point considered is calculated for each layer at each point. This sum is denoted :  $\Pi_{i,j}$ . The denominator which is used in the vorticity expression then takes the value :

$$\Delta p_{max} = \max \left\{ \Delta \bar{p}_{i,j}^{x,y}, \frac{1}{8} \max (\Pi_{i,j}, \Pi_{i-1,j}, \Pi_{i+1,j}, \Pi_{i,j-1}, \Pi_{i,j+1}) \right\} \quad (91)$$

In the case where the two arguments of this collation are zero, a residual numerical value  $\delta p$  is introduced. In HYCOM 2.0.01,  $\delta p = 10^{-2} m$  is used.

### 4.3 Usage

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the numerical calculation of forcing terms in the momentum equations and the evolution of the baroclinic velocity components are realized by the subprogram :

```
subroutine momtum(m,n)
```

#### 4.3.1 Order of operations

##### Calculation of Forcing Terms

The first step consists of calculating the Montgomery potential at the bottom. For this, the relation (68) is utilized. The potential  $\Pi_{N+1}$  is calculated from the field of initial conditions (subroutine **inicon**). Once the coefficient  $(1 + \eta)$  has been evaluated with the help of expression (72), it is then possible to determine the Montgomery potential at the  $N$  interfaces above by the relation (63).

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

Next, the invariant part (along the vertical) of the bottom drag is estimated by applying the formula (77) introduced in Section 4.1.2.

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

For each of the two horizontal components, the next step does the following operations in order :

1. Calculation of the spatial average of the barotropic vorticity originating from the barotropic-baroclinic splitting (*cf.* § 4.2, system 81).
2. Time interpolation of the wind stress.
3. Determination of the wind forcing of the surface layer term, described in Section 4.1.3 to which the calculation of the Montgomery potential gradient for the mixed layer is adjoined.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### Calculation of Velocity Components

The algorithm follows a treatment by layer.

The first step consists of calculating the total currents at times  $(n - 1)\Delta t$  and  $n\Delta t$  and the associated fluxes. Then, to determine the optimum value of the difference in pressure given by the formula (91).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The next operation consists of calculating indicators of the presence of bottom topography in neighboring cells by the method described in Section 4.2.5.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

In the next phase, the relation (82) is applied and the turbulent momentum fluxes are calculated by the procedure mentioned in Section 4.2.3. Then comes the inference of the weighted gradient of the Montgomery potential following the theory outlined in Section 4.2.4. If the layer concerned includes drag dissipation, it is integrated following the steps described in Section 4.1.2. The new values of the velocity components are now ready to be estimated.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### 4.3.2 Flowcharts

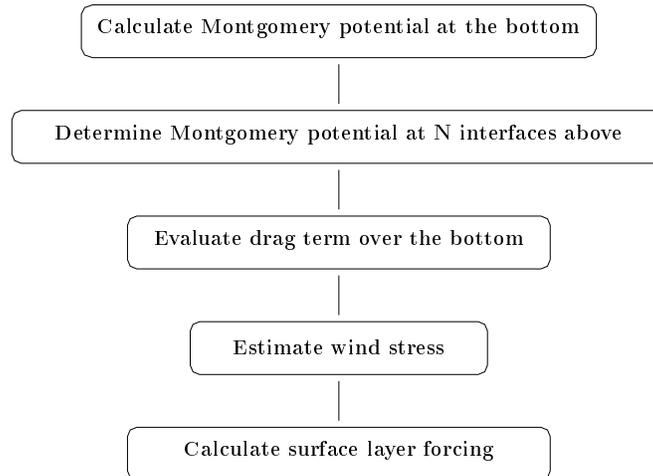


Figure 6: *Order of the treatment of the forcing terms in the momentum equations*

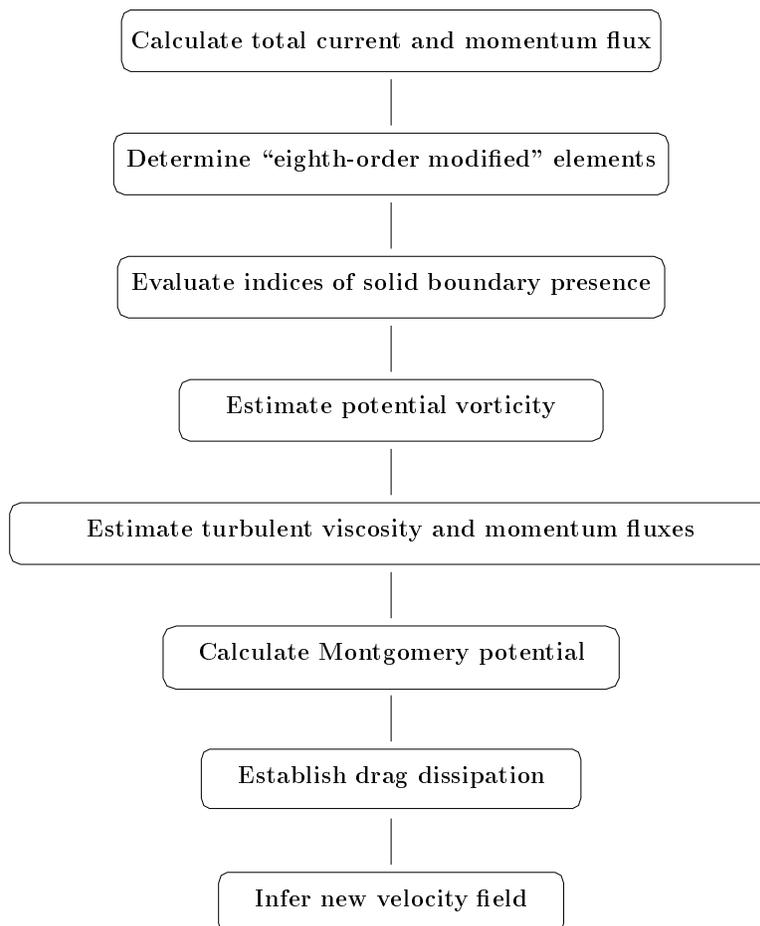


Figure 7: *Order of the treatment of the momentum equation*

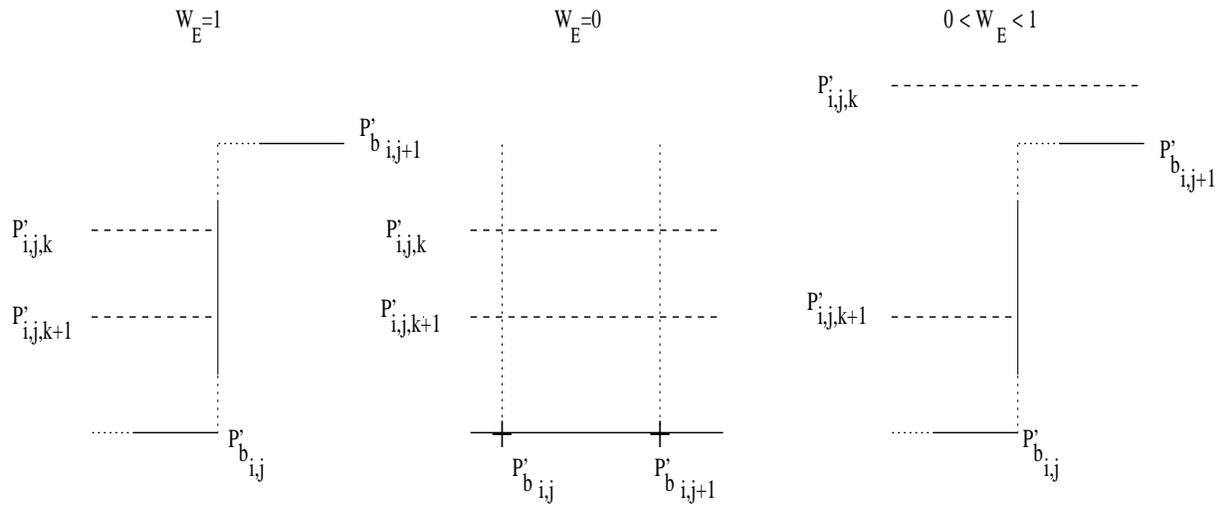


Figure 8: *Schematic of the intersection of layers with solid boundaries*

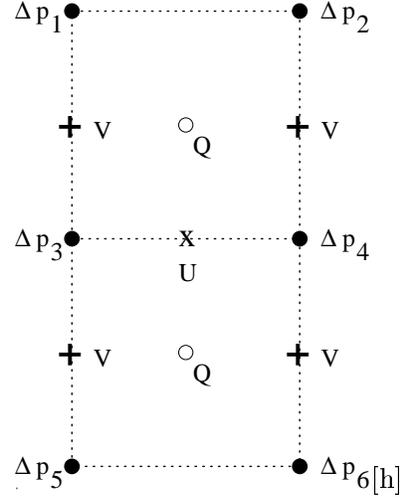


Figure 9: *Distribution of variables used in the evaluation of the Coriolis term at the central point  $u(i, j)$*

## 4.4 Variables

### 4.4.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

$\mathcal{D}_{i,j}$

$M_{i,j,k}$

$p_b'' = \eta p_b'$

$\bar{u}_b, \bar{v}_b$

$\Pi_{i,j,N+1}$

$\bar{u}'_b, \bar{v}'_b$

$\delta z$

$\zeta \bar{u}, \zeta \bar{v}$

$\rho_s, \rho_k$

$\tau_{s_x}, \tau_{s_y}$

$f(x, y)$

Notation in **momtum.f**

drag(i, j)

montg(i, j, k)

pbavg(i, j)

ubot(i, j), vbot(i, j)

psikk(i, j)

util1(i, j), util2(i, j)

thkbot

ubrhs(i, j), vbrhs(i, j)

thmix(i, j, n), theta(k)

stresx, stresy

corio(i, j)

$H_1$	h1
$(\partial M/\partial x)_{i',j'}, (\partial M/\partial y)_{i',j'}$	pgfx(i, j), pgfy(i, j)
$(\partial M/\partial x)_{i,j}^{fin}, (\partial M/\partial y)_{i,j}^{fin}$	gradx(i, j), grady(i, j)
$\Pi_{i,j}$	dpmx(i, j)
$(u_x - v_y)^2$	defor1(i, j)
$(v_x + u_y)^2$	defor2(i, j)
$u_d$	veldff
$u_O, u_E$	uja(i, j), ujb(i, j)
$v_N, v_S$	via(i, j), vib(i, j)
$w_O, w_E$	wgtja(i, j), wgtjb(i, j)
$w_N, w_S$	wgtia(i, j), wgtib(i, j)
$\tilde{w}_{i',j'}$	util1(i, j)
$\zeta(x, y)$	vort(i, j)
$\lambda$	viscos
$\nu$	visc(i, j)
$\epsilon$	epsil

#### 4.4.2 Local variables

##### *Subroutine momtum*

a, b	First and second argument (respectively) to <i>hfharm</i> .
botstr(i, j)	Drag dissipation.
cutoff	Cutoff thickness (0.5 meter).
d12u	Del-squared u.
d12uja	Del-squared uja.
d12ujb	Del-squared ujb.
d12v	Del-squared v.
d12via	Del-squared via.

d12vib	Del-squared vib.
dpgn	Vertical excursion above the mixed layer base.
dpia, dpib	
dpja, dpjb	Intermediate variables in the calculation of turbulent flux in the presence of a boundary.
dpmx	Maximum (or minimum) layer thickness.
dpup	Vertical excursion above the mixed layer base.
dpxy	Layer thickness (at least one millimeter).
dt1inv	1/delt1
hfharm	Harmonic mean divided by two.
i, ia, ib	Array indices.
ifirst	First call flag.
j, ja, jb	Array indices.
k, ka	Layer indices.
l	Loop index.
lpipe_momtum	Flag to compare two model runs.
m, n	Time step index.
mask	Comparison mask.
mbdy	Halo extent.
oneta	$1+\eta = p_{\text{total}}/p_{\text{prime}}$
phi, plo	Intermediate variables in the calculation of the average velocity near the bottom.
pstres	Layer thickness for wind stress.
ptopl, pbotl	Intermediate variables in the drag calculation.
q	Flux.
scvxa, scvxb	Grid spacing.
scuya, scuyb	Grid spacing.

<code>stress</code>	Top and bottom boundary layer stress.
<code>stresx, stresy</code>	Components of the wind stress.
<code>text*12</code>	Comparison title.
<code>thkbop</code>	Layer thickness in meters.
<code>ubot, vbot</code>	Components of velocity near the bottom.
<code>visca, viscb</code>	Viscosity.
<code>visu, visv</code>	U and V viscosity.
<code>vort</code>	Vorticity.
<code>wgtia, wgtib</code>	Sidewall extent.
<code>wgtja, wgtjb</code>	Sidewall extent.

#### 4.5 Procedures

Functions	<code>harmon????</code>
<i>Subroutines</i>	<code>momtum</code>

## 5 Barotropic mode : barotp.f

### 5.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

In introducing the decomposition (1) and summing over all layers of the general continuity equation, the following form is obtained :

$$\frac{\partial \eta p'_b}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(1 + \eta) \bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b] = 0 \quad (92)$$

To establish the corresponding equations of motion, consider the average of the general form (60) in the sense of (3). Next, the decomposition (2) is introduced, then the relations (4) and (1). Finally, the system is obtained (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995) :

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} [\bar{u}(1 + \eta)] - (1 + \eta) f \bar{v} + \frac{1}{\rho_r} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} [\eta p'_b (1 + \eta)] + \frac{R + Q(\eta)}{p'_b} = 0 \quad (93)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} [\bar{v}(1 + \eta)] + (1 + \eta) f \bar{u} + \frac{1}{\rho_r} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} [\eta p'_b (1 + \eta)] + \frac{R' + Q'(\eta)}{p'_b} = 0$$

which is written more simply :

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} - f \bar{v} + \frac{1}{\rho_r} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (\eta p'_b) = \frac{\partial \bar{u}^*}{\partial t} \quad (94)$$

$$\frac{\partial \bar{v}}{\partial t} + f \bar{u} + \frac{1}{\rho_r} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} (\eta p'_b) = \frac{\partial \bar{v}^*}{\partial t}$$

$Q(\eta)$  and  $Q'(\eta)$  are expressions grouping the nonlinear terms.  $R$  and  $R'$  represent the components of pressure gradient induced by the stratification. The pseudo-velocity  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}^*$  ( $\bar{u}^*$ ,  $\bar{v}^*$ ) assures the property (4).

The time step of the external mode,  $\Delta t_B$  (barotropic), and the time step of the internal mode,  $\Delta t_b$  (baroclinic), are denoted such that :

$$\Delta t_b = \mathcal{N} \Delta t_B \quad (95)$$

The barotropic equations are therefore solved  $\mathcal{N}$  times between two solutions of the baroclinic equations.

#### 5.1.1 Rescaling of variables

In the last step of the continuity equation, a tendency calculation that uses layer thicknesses obtained at height points by the application of formula (33) necessitates a rescaling

of the variables since they are distributed on a C grid. In fact, during initialization (sub-routine `inicon`), the depths at velocity points have been introduced by the relations :

$${}_u p'_{b_{i,j}} = \min(p'_{b_{i-1,j}}, p'_{b_{i,j}}) \quad \text{and} \quad {}_v p'_{b_{i,j}} = \min(p'_{b_{i,j-1}}, p'_{b_{i,j}}) \quad (96)$$

To retain consistency with the initial definitions, at the point of the  $u$  component, the average thickness is introduced :

$$\begin{aligned} {}_u \Delta p'_{i,j,k} = & \max \{0., \\ & \min [{}_u p'_{b_{i,j}}, 1/2 ({}_u p'_{i,j,k+1} + {}_u p'_{i-1,j,k+1})] \\ & - \min [{}_u p'_{b_{i,j}}, 1/2 ({}_u p'_{i,j,k} + {}_u p'_{i-1,j,k})] \} \end{aligned} \quad (97)$$

The equivalent formula is used at the point of the  $v$  component.

### 5.1.2 Rearrangement of the velocity profile

When the thickness of a layer is so small as to be considered numerically zero, it may still contain momentum. When layer  $k$  “disappears”, in terms of momentum it is still considered to exist and acquires the momentum of the layer above. To translate this mechanism, the variable  $q$  is introduced :

$$q = \delta - \min({}_u \Delta p'_k, \delta) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } {}_u \Delta p'_k \geq \delta \\ \delta - {}_u \Delta p'_k & \text{if } {}_u \Delta p'_k < \delta, \end{cases} \quad (98)$$

which permits the weighted value to be defined (the same principle applies to the  $v$  component) :

$$\underline{u}_k = \frac{1}{\delta} [u'_k ({}_u \Delta p'_k) + u'_{k-1} (\delta - {}_u \Delta p'_k)] \quad (99)$$

In HYCOM 2.0.01,  $\delta = 10^{-1} m$ .

### 5.1.3 Filtering

In the same manner as in the advection step (*cf.* § 3), Asselin filtering for the velocity is introduced to fix the problems of dispersion caused by the leapfrog scheme. Take the component  $u'$  of the baroclinic velocity for the layer  $k$  and the node  $(i, j)$ . Then write :

$$\widehat{u}^n \widehat{\Delta p}^n = \left[ u'^n (1 - 2\gamma) (\Delta p'^n + \epsilon) + \gamma \left( \widehat{u}^{n-1} \widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} + u'^{n+1} \Delta p'^{n+1} \right) \right] \quad (100)$$

A residual thickness  $\epsilon$  is introduced for which this form remains valid when  ${}_u \Delta p'_{i,j,k} \rightarrow 0$ . In HYCOM,  $\epsilon$  is set to a numerical value of  $10^{-3} m$  and  $\gamma = 0.25$ . The thickness of the layer  ${}_u \Delta p'_{i,j,k}$  is also filtered by the formula :

$$\widehat{\Delta p}^n = (1 - 2\gamma) (\Delta p'^n + \epsilon) + \gamma \left( \widehat{\Delta p}^{n-1} + \Delta p'^{n+1} \right) \quad (101)$$

#### 5.1.4 Continuity equation

The continuity equation (92) is treated with the simplification  $(1+\eta) \approx 1$ . As indicated in Section 2, using this approximation does not perturb the property :  $\partial p'_b / \partial t = 0$  (Baraille & Filatoff, 1995). The treated variable is therefore  $p''_b = \eta p'_b$ . Combining forward time-stepping :

$$P''_b{}^{m+1} = P''_b{}^m - \Delta t_B \nabla \cdot (\bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b)^m \quad (102)$$

with Asselin time filtering gives :

$$P''_b{}^{m+1} = (1-w)P''_b{}^m + wP''_b{}^{m-1} - \Delta t_B(1+w)\nabla \cdot (\bar{\mathbf{u}} p'_b)^m \quad (103)$$

Set  $w = 0.125$ .

#### 5.1.5 Equations of motion

The equations of motion given by the system (94) call the reference density  $\rho_r$  introduced to represent the ocean of reference depth  $H$ . In HYCOM 2.0.01, the identification  $\rho_r \equiv \rho_0$  is made (*cf.* § 17).

The vector  $\partial \bar{\mathbf{u}}^* / \partial t$  appearing in the right hand side of the equations of system (94) can then be seen as a forcing term in the generation of the linear barotropic mode. The solution of this system necessitates the extraction of the component  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}^*$ . In the preceding step (subroutine `momtum`), the baroclinic velocity profile expressed by the variable  $\mathbf{u}''_k = \mathbf{u}'_k + \bar{\mathbf{u}}^*$  is calculated. In carrying out the sums :

$$S_u = \sum_{k=1}^N u''_k \Delta p'_k \quad \text{and} \quad S_v = \sum_{k=1}^N v''_k \Delta p'_k \quad (104)$$

and in accounting for the property (4), :

$$\bar{u}^* = \frac{S_u}{p'_b} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{v}^* = \frac{S_v}{p'_b} \quad (105)$$

Note that the pseudo-vector  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}^*$  is not a variable of state in the system whose evolution is sought. This is to say that in the preceding step (subroutine `momtum`), the transition is effectively inferred by :  $\mathbf{u}''_{i,j,k} \rightarrow (\mathbf{u}'_k + \bar{\mathbf{u}}^*)_{i,j}^{n+1}$ . Moreover, the weighting  $w$  is introduced such that :

$$\bar{u}^{m+1}_{i,j} = (1-w)\bar{u}^m_{i,j} + w\bar{u}^{m-1}_{i,j} - \Delta t_B(1+w) \left[ -\alpha_0 \left( \frac{\partial p''_b}{\partial x} \right)_{i,j}^{m+1} + \overline{f\bar{v}}^m_{i,j} + \bar{u}^{*,n+1}_{i,j} / \Delta t_b \right] \quad (106)$$

The Coriolis term is expressed by the centered form :

$$\overline{f\bar{v}}_{i,j} = 1/8(f'_{i,j} + f'_{i,j+1}) [(\bar{v}_v p'_b)_{i,j} + (\bar{v}_v p'_b)_{i-1,j} + (\bar{v}_v p'_b)_{i,j+1} + (\bar{v}_v p'_b)_{i-1,j+1}] \quad (107)$$

with the barotropic potential vorticity  $f'$  defined as

$$f'_{i,j} = \frac{f}{p'_{b_{i,j}}}. \quad (108)$$

The continuity equation is solved first. The pressure gradient of the equation of motion (106) uses the value of the state of perturbation  $\eta$  coming from this calculation. The combination of the forward time-stepping in the continuity equation and backward time-stepping in the momentum equations is called the forward-backward scheme.

## 5.2 Usage

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the numerical calculation of the evolution of the barotropic mode is performed in the subprogram :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### 5.2.1 Order of operations

The new values of the layer thicknesses coming from the continuity equation are introduced by calculating the pressures at interfaces :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Then, for each velocity component, the next step is to rescale at each point the thicknesses of  $N$  layers by applying the procedure formulated in (97) and to effect the rearrangement of the vertical velocity profile :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

From these profiles the corresponding components of the pseudo-velocity  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}^*$  are extracted by the calculation of sums given by (104) :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

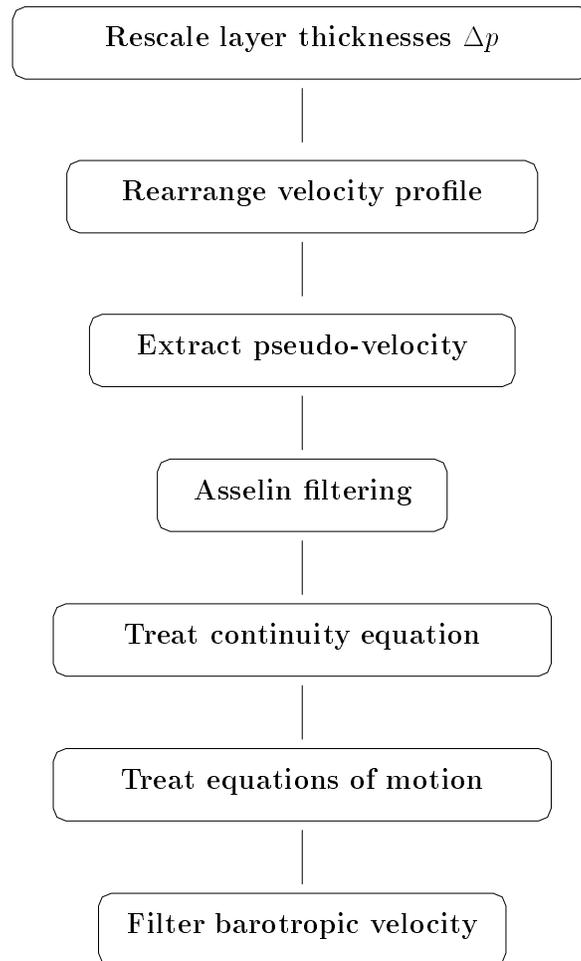
The final operation consists of using the Asselin filtering on the baroclinic velocity components  $\mathbf{u}'$  :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

In the step which follows, the treatment of the equations of continuity and motion are performed  $\mathcal{N}$  times, as described previously (*cf.* § 5.1.4 and § 5.1.5). The new values of the barotropic component  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$  and of the state of perturbation  $\eta$  are calculated using the Asselin weighting factor  $w$  :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

## 5.2.2 Flowchart

Figure 10: *Order of the barotropic mode calculation*

### 5.3 Variables

#### 5.3.1 Identification

<u>Notation in the theory</u>	<u>Notation in <b>barotp.f</b></u>
$\Delta t_B, \Delta t_b$	dlt,?????
$f'_{i,j}$	pvtrop(i,j)
$\gamma, (1 - 2\gamma)$	????,????
$\mathcal{N}$	lstep
$p''_{b,i,j}$	pbavg(i,j)
$uP'_{b,i,j}, uP'_{b,i,j}$	depthu(i,j),depthv(i,j)
$u\Delta p'_{i,j,k}, uP'_{i,j,k}$	???(i,j,k),???(i,j,k)
$S_u, S_v$	utotn(i,j),vtotn(i,j)
$\bar{u}^n_{i,j}, \bar{v}^n_{i,j}$	ubavg(i,j,n),vbavg(i,j,n)
W	wbaro

#### 5.3.2 Local variables

##### *Subroutine barotp*

i, j	Array indices.
l	Loop index.
ll	Time step index.
lll	Time step loop index.
lpipe_barotp	Flag to compare two model runs.
m, n, ml, nl, mn	Time step indices.
mbdy	Halo extent.
q	Mean height correction.
sump	Total height.
utndcy, vtndcy	Tendency of the barotropic velocity components.
vthenu	V then U flag.

## 5.4 Procedures

Subroutines      `barotp`

## 6 Ocean-atmosphere exchanges : thermf.f

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the ocean-atmosphere exchanges considered are of three types :

1. The radiative exchanges  $R$  : balance of incident solar radiation and radiation emitted by the sea surface.
2. Turbulent heat transfers
  - A latent heat transfer  $\mathcal{E}$  due to evaporation of seawater ;
  - A sensible heat transfer  $\mathcal{H}$  which is established by convection when a significant difference exists between the temperature of the sea surface and that of the air.
3. Mechanical energy transfers : essentially the effect of wind

### 6.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

The atmospheric thermal forcing is specified via the following surface fields:

- . net radiation : `radflx(i,j,1)` ;
- . shortwave radiation : `swflx(i,j,1)` ;
- . wind speed at the sea surface (10m) : `wndspd(i,j,1)` ;
- . air temperature : `airtmp(i,j,1)` ;
- . water vapor content : `vapmix(i,j,1)` ;
- . precipitation : `precip(i,j,1)`.

The fields are furnished at times  $l\Delta\mathcal{T}$  where  $\Delta\mathcal{T}$  is the sampling period and are interpolated to the simulation's timestep,  $n\Delta t$ , using the weighted average of four samples for monthly data (Hermite interpolation in time with weights  $w_0, w_1, w_2, w_3$ ) or of two samples for higher frequency data (linear interpolation in time with weights  $w_0, w_1$ ).

#### 6.1.1 Heat balance

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the effect of ocean-atmosphere exchanges (except the mechanical effect of the wind) on the mixed layer is summed in the calculation of thermal balance :

$$B = R + \mathcal{H} + \mathcal{E} \quad (109)$$

A positive (*i.e.*, upward) flux of sensible heat corresponds to a loss, a contribution of energy by the sea following the sign of the difference between the sea and the atmospheric boundary layer :

$$\mathcal{H} = C_{p_{air}} E_x (T_s - T_a) \quad (110)$$

$E_x$  is an exchange coefficient such that :  $E_x = \rho_a C_T W$

$\rho_a$  : Mass/volume of the air

$C_T$  : Heat transfer coefficient

$C_{p_{air}}$  : Specific heat of the air

$T_s$  : Sea surface temperature

$T_a$  : Temperature in the atmospheric boundary layer

$W$  : Wind velocity

Responsible for important quantities of heat exchanged between the sea and atmosphere by evaporation, the latent heat flux always induces a heat loss by the ocean. To formulate this term in the balance estimation, in HYCOM 2.0.01, the following expression is used :

$$\mathcal{E} = E_x \mathcal{L}(H_u - E_v) \quad (111)$$

With :

$\mathcal{L}$  : latent heat of vaporization

$H_u$  : specific humidity

$E_v$  : evaporation

Moreover, the precipitation-evaporation balance in the evolution of the salinity (therefore the density) of the mixed layer is accounted for by prescribing the precipitation.

### 6.1.2 Mechanical energy transfers

A wind representable by the vector  $\mathbf{W}(t)$  induces on the surface a wind stress  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_s(t)$  which can be well-expressed by a quadratic expression of type :

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_s = \rho_a C_D |\mathbf{W}| \mathbf{W} \quad (112)$$

$C_D$  is a coefficient realizing sea surface drag. It is set at  $C_D \simeq 10^{-3}$ . The expression of the drag velocity at the surface  $u_*$  is obtained by the relation :

$$u_*^2 \mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_s / \rho_0 \quad (113)$$

At the point  $z$ , the classic parametrization of the concept of turbulent diffusion is used :

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}(z) = \rho K_M \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial z} \quad (114)$$

with :

$\mathbf{x}$  : horizontal unit vector

$K_M$  : coefficient of turbulent momentum diffusion

### 6.1.3 Thermal forcing at sidewalls

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

#### 6.1.4 Relaxation to SST and/or SSS

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

#### 6.1.5 Alternative bulk parameterizations of air-sea fluxes

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 6.2 Usage

The numerical calculation of thermal balance is carried out by the subroutine :

```
subroutine thermf(m,n)
```

#### 6.2.1 Order of operations

First, the values of thermodynamic parameters (radiation, wind, *etc*) are interpolated at an instant in the simulation. From there, it is possible to determine the flux of latent and sensible heat as well as the velocity drag at the surface. The following step accounts for the thermal balance by proceeding to the inference of new values of temperature, salinity, and density of the mixed layer. During the last phase, the buoyancy growth necessary to establish the Monin-Obukov length is calculated. This length is the reference in the step of modeling the evolution of the surface layer (*cf.* § 8).

### 6.2.2 Flowchart

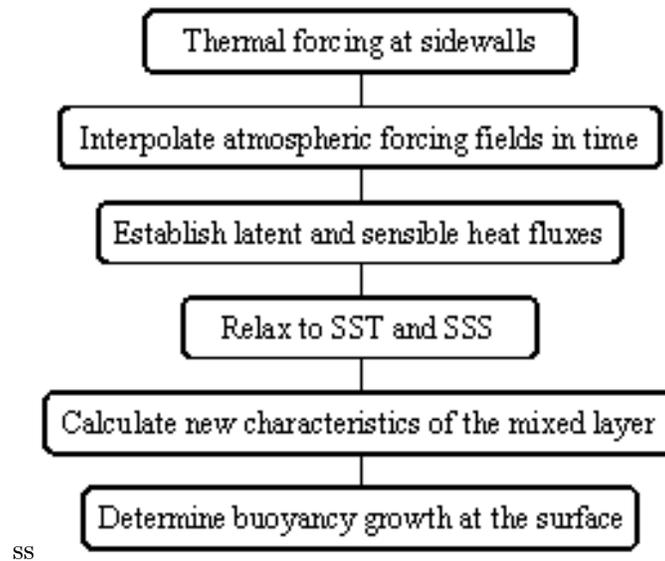


Figure 11: Order of the thermal balance calculation in the mixed layer in HYCOM 2.0.01

## 6.3 Variables

### 6.3.1 Identification

<u>Notation in the theory</u>	<u>Notation in <b>thermf.f</b></u>
$B$	surflx(i, j)
$C_{pair}$	csubp
$C_{pwater}$	spc ifh
$C_T$	ct
$E_x$	exchng
$E_v$	vpmx
$\mathcal{E}$	evap
$H_u$	qsatur

$\mathcal{L}$	???????
$R$	radflx
$u_*$	ustar
$W$	wind
$\rho_a$	airdns

### 6.3.2 Local variables

#### *Subroutine thermf*

d1, d2, d3, d4	Field totals.
i, j	Array indices.
k	Layer index.
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.
nm	N or m.
pmean	Mean layer thickness.
pwl	Wall pressure.
rareac	1/sum extent.
rmean	Mean density.
rmean0	Initial mean density.
runsec	Model seconds in run.
s1mean	Mean surface salinity.
secpyr	Seconds per year.
smean	Mean salinity.
smean0	Initial mean salinity.
t1mean	Mean surface temperature.
tmean	Mean temperature.
tmean0	Initial mean temperature.

*Subroutine thermfj*

<code>airdns</code>	Air density at sea level. (kg/m**3)
<code>airt</code>	Air temperature (C).
<code>cd</code>	Drag coefficient.
<code>cd0</code>	Wind exchange coefficient.
<code>cekman</code>	Constant for calculating thickness of ekman layer.
<code>clh</code>	Latent heat exchange coefficient.
<code>clmax</code>	Maximum allowed cl.
<code>clmin</code>	Minimum allowed cl.
<code>cl0</code>	Latent heat polynomial coefficient.
<code>cl1</code>	Latent heat polynomial coefficient.
<code>csH</code>	Sensible heat exchange coefficient.
<code>csice</code>	Ice-air sensible exchange coefficient.
<code>csubp</code>	Specific heat of air at constant pressure. (j/kg/deg)
<code>ctl</code>	Thermal transfer coefficient (latent).
<code>cts1</code>	Thermal transfer coefficient (sensible, stable).
<code>cts2</code>	Thermal transfer coefficient (sensible, unstable).
<code>dsgdt</code>	Dsigdt at the surface.
<code>emnp</code>	Evaporation-precipitation balance.
<code>evap</code>	Evaporation balance.
<code>evaplh</code>	Latent heat of evaporation. (j/kg)
<code>i, j</code>	Array indices.
<code>l</code>	Loop index.
<code>m, n</code>	Time step indices.
<code>pairc</code>	Air pressure. (mb)*100

<code>prcp</code>	Precipitation (m/sec; > 0 since into ocean).
<code>qsatur</code>	Saturation specific humidity.
<code>radfl</code>	Net radiative thermal flux (w/m**2) into ocean.
<code>rair</code>	Density of air.
<code>rgas</code>	Gas constant. (j/kg/k)
<code>rmus</code>	Salinity relaxation coefficient.
<code>rmut</code>	Temperature relaxation coefficient.
<code>slat</code>	Latent heat coefficient.
<code>smn</code>	Time level averaged surface salinity.
<code>snsibl</code>	Sensible heat flux into atmosphere.
<code>ssen</code>	Sensible heat coefficient.
<code>swfl</code>	Shortwave radiative thermal flux (w/m**2) into ocean.
<code>tdif</code>	SST-airt.
<code>tmn</code>	Time level averaged surface temperature.
<code>tzero</code>	Celsius to kelvin temperature offset.
<code>ustrmn</code>	Minimum ustar.
<code>vpmx</code>	Evaporation.
<code>wind</code>	Wind speed. (m/s)
<code>wsmx</code>	Maximum allowed wind speed for <i>cl</i> and <i>cd</i> .
<code>wsmin</code>	Minimum allowed wind speed for <i>cl</i> and <i>cd</i> .
<code>wsph</code>	Wind speed between <i>wsmin</i> and <i>wsmx</i> .

#### 6.4 Procedures

Subroutines	<code>thermf</code> , <code>thermfj</code>
Functions	<code>dsigds??</code> , <code>dsigdt??</code> , <code>qsatur??</code>

## 7 Energy Loan Sea Ice Model : icloan.f

### 7.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

In HYCOM, an energy loan sea ice model was developed to manage the energetics of water phase changes in a consistent yet simple manner. The model, which has much in common with the one developed by Semtner (1976) focusses on two aspects of the influence of sea ice:

1. the stabilization of ocean temperature near the freezing point through ice formation and melting;
2. the impact of the ice surface on ocean-atmosphere energy fluxes.

Concerning the stabilization of ocean temperature, the energy loan concept of the ice model ensures that the oceanic mixed layer temperature does not drop below the freezing point ( $-1.8^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) when the surface heat flux removes heat from the ocean. At each model grid point, the ocean borrows energy from an “energy bank” to stabilize temperature at the freezing point. The energy required to maintain this temperature comes from freezing an appropriate amount of seawater. Conversely, if the surface heat flux adds heat to the ocean, the energy loan must be repaid before the ocean temperature in a grid box is permitted to rise above freezing.

The influence of ice on surface fluxes is large, both by virtue of its high albedo compared to water and because an ice surface can be much colder than open water. In the present ice model, surface temperature is calculated based on the assumption that the system is energetically in a steady state; i.e., the heat flux through the ice matches the atmospheric heat flux.

#### 7.1.1 Surface temperature flux

To illustrate this approach, the atmospheric heat flux is written as  $F_{air} = a(T_i - T_a)$ , and the heat flux through the ice as  $F_{ice} = b(T_w - T_i)$ , where  $T_i$ ,  $T_a$ , and  $T_w$  represents ice, air, and water temperature while  $a$  and  $b$  are proportionality factors. Given  $T_a$ ,  $T_w$ , and a first guess of  $T_i$  (the unknown in this problem),  $T_i$  is modified by an amount  $\Delta T_i$  to minimize the difference between  $F_{air}$  and  $F_{ice}$ :

$$a(T_i + \Delta T_i - T_a) = b(T_w - T_i - \Delta T_i),$$

which yields

$$\Delta T_i = \frac{aT_a + bT_w}{a + b} - T_i. \quad (115)$$

To make this formula applicable in situations where  $F_{air}$  is a mixture of sensible, latent, and radiative heat fluxes, the expressions  $aT_i - aT_i$  and  $bT_i - bT_i$  are added to the numerator of (115), then the original definitions of  $F_{air}$  and  $F_{ice}$  are substituted:

$$\Delta T_i = \frac{F_{ice} - F_{air}}{a + b}. \quad (116)$$

The new temperature obviously must not be allowed to exceed the freezing point until the ice has melted completely.

Practical application of (116) requires knowledge of the coefficients  $a, b$  which represent the derivatives  $dF_{air}/dT_i$  and  $dF_{ice}/dT_i$ , respectively. Guidance on the magnitude of  $a$  can be obtained from the conventional heat flux “bulk” formula. It suggests that  $a = c_t \rho c_p U$  where  $c_t$  is a nondimensional transfer coefficient (similar to the drag coefficient),  $\rho$  is the air density,  $c_p$  is the specific heat of air at constant pressure, and  $U$  is the wind speed. The formula for radiative energy loss,  $\sigma T^4$ , suggests that the previous estimate for  $a$  should be increased by an amount  $4\sigma T^3$ . A reasonable choice for  $b$  is the ratio of ice thermal conductivity to ice thickness,  $k_{ice}/H_{ice}$ .

In the interest of computational efficiency in coupled climate models, information exchange with the atmosphere should be minimized. The coefficient  $a$  is therefore assumed to be independent of atmospheric state variables. To avoid oscillatory behavior in (116),  $a$  should be chosen somewhat larger than “typical” values of  $c_t \rho c_p U + 4\sigma T^3$ ; in other words, a strategy of prudent under-relaxation of  $T_i$  is adopted.

Finally, a statement is needed to relate the rate of energy borrowing or repaying to the “composite” atmospheric heat flux:

$$F = cF_{ice} + (1 - c)F_{opw}, \quad (117)$$

where  $F_{opw}$  is the thermal energy flux over open water and  $c$  is the fractional ice coverage. As defined in (117),  $F$  is the energy flux felt by the ocean irrespective of the presence of ice. In other words, we assume that the energy flux between the atmosphere and ice,  $F_{ice}$ , equals the energy flux between ice and ocean. This assumption is compatible with the steady state (zero heat flux divergence) made to derive (116).

Concerning implementation of the ice model in HYCOM 2.0.01, the surface temperature is represented by the temperature of layer 1 regardless of whether the model is run with hybrid vertical coordinates or in MICOM mode. When the model is run with hybrid vertical coordinates and a non-slab mixed layer model, no attempt is made to reduce the thickness of layer 1 at a given grid point when ice forms.

## 7.2 Usage

In HYCOM 2.0.01, the numerical calculation of the influence of ice on surface temperature is carried out by the subroutine :

```
subroutine icloan(m,n)
```

### 7.2.1 Order of operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 7.2.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 7.3 Variables

### 7.3.1 Identification

#### Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

#### Notation in **icloan.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 7.3.2 Local variables

#### *Subroutine icloan*

covice	Ice coverage (rel. units, 0.0 to 1.0).
fusion	Latent heat of fusion. ( $J/kg$ )
hice	Actual ice thickness. ( $m$ )
i, j	Array indices.
icex	Ice exceeding thkmax.
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.
paybak	Returned energy.
rate	Maximum ice melting rate. ( $m/sec$ )
rhoice	Density of ice. ( $kg/m^3$ )
saldif	Salinity difference water minus ice.
salflx	Salt flux (implied by fresh water flux).
surflx	Net total heatflux between atm and ocean or ice. ( $W/m^2$ )
temice	Ice surface temperature.
tgrad	Vertical temperature gradient inside ice. ( $deg/m$ )
thicmx	Maximum ice thickness. ( $m$ )
thin	Minimum ice thickness. ( $m$ )
thkice	Average ice thickness (=hice x covice(i,j)).

<code>thkmax</code>	Maximum ice thickness. ( <i>m</i> )
<code>tice</code>	Melting point. ( <i>deg</i> )
<code>tmx1</code>	Mixed-layer temp due to diab. forcing.

#### 7.4 Procedures

Subroutines     `icloan`

## 8 KPP Vertical Mixing : mxkpp.f

### 8.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

The K-Profile Parameterization (KPP; Large *et al.*, 1994; 1997) is the first non-slab mixed layer model included in HYCOM. The KPP model provides mixing from surface to bottom, smoothly matching the large surface boundary layer diffusivity/viscosity profiles to the weak diapycnal diffusivity/viscosity profiles of the interior ocean. There are numerous advantages to this model. It works on a relatively coarse and unevenly spaced vertical grid. It parameterizes the influence of a larger suite of physical processes than other commonly used mixing schemes. In the ocean interior, the contribution of background internal wave breaking, shear instability mixing, and double diffusion (both salt fingering and diffusive instability) are parameterized. In the surface boundary layer, the influences of wind-driven mixing, surface buoyancy fluxes, and convective instability are parameterized. The KPP algorithm also parameterizes the influence of nonlocal mixing of T and S, which permits the development of countergradient fluxes. Further details on physical assumptions and parameterizations used to construct the model are provided in Large *et al.*, 1994.

The KPP model is semi-implicit, requiring multiple iterations. For the first iteration, vertical profiles of diffusivity/viscosity coefficients are calculated at model interfaces from the initial profiles of model variables. The model variables are then mixed by solving the one-dimensional vertical diffusion equation at each grid point. For the second iteration, the vertically mixed profiles of model variables are used to estimate new diffusivity/viscosity profiles, which are then used to mix the original profiles of model variables. This procedure should be repeated until the mixed profiles of model variables differ insignificantly from the mixed profiles obtained from the previous iteration. HYCOM tests revealed that two iterations are reasonably adequate, given the computational overhead required for each one.

The full KPP procedure is first applied at pressure grid points, where thermodynamical variables and tracers are mixed. For this purpose, momentum components are horizontally interpolated to the pressure grid points. After completing the iterative procedure at pressure points, mixing is performed at momentum ( $u$  and  $v$ ) points by interpolating the final viscosity profiles at the pressure points to the momentum points, then solving the vertical diffusion equation. The full iterative procedure is therefore not required at the momentum points.

The KPP algorithm does not require a convection algorithm that mixes adjacent layers when the upper layer is denser than the lower layer. HYCOM does perform convection when Kraus-Turner mixing is used, however.

#### 8.1.1 Surface fluxes

Prior to executing the KPP algorithm, surface fluxes of thermodynamical variables and momentum are distributed entirely over the uppermost model layer, with the exception

of penetrating shortwave radiation. Shortwave radiation can penetrate to deeper layers, with the penetration depth depending on water clarity. The two-component (red and blue light) exponential decay model of Jerlov (1976) is used to calculate penetrating shortwave radiation in HYCOM. If HYCOM is run in MICOM mode, or if the simple Kraus-Turner mixed layer model 2 is used, all shortwave radiation is absorbed in the mixed layer. If the full Kraus-Turner mixed layer model 1 is used, penetrating shortwave radiation can be invoked as an option. Otherwise, all shortwave radiation is absorbed in the mixed layer. Penetrating shortwave radiation is always used for KPP mixing and all non-slab mixed layer models that will be included in the future.

The depth of penetration is a function of water clarity, represented by the Jerlov water type. The water type is assigned integer values from 1 through 5, with 1 representing the clearest water. Given the incoming shortwave radiation flux  $S_0$  at the surface, the flux passing through model interface  $k$  located at pressure  $p_k$  is

$$S_k = S_0 \left[ r \exp\left(\frac{-p_{k+1}}{\beta_R}\right) + (1 - r) \exp\left(\frac{-p_{k+1}}{\beta_B}\right) \right], \quad (118)$$

where  $r$  is the fraction of light that is red,  $\beta_R$  is the penetration depth scale of red light, and  $\beta_B$  is the penetration depth scale of blue light. The parameters for all five Jerlov water types are summarized in Table 2.

Table 2: Parameters for calculation of radiation flux based on Jerlov's water types

Jerlov Water Type	r	$\beta_R$	$\beta_B$
1	0.58	0.35	23.0
2	0.62	0.60	20.0
3	0.67	1.00	17.0
4	0.77	1.50	14.0
5	0.78	1.40	7.9

Presently, Jerlov water type is specified by the user for each grid point at the beginning of the model run. In the future, water type could be determined by biological or suspended sediment models.

There are two choices for bulk parameterization of surface fluxes in HYCOM. The first is the standard constant bulk coefficients. The second is the sophisticated parameterization scheme of Kara *et al.* (2000) that has been extensively tested by researchers at the Naval Research Laboratory, and that was embedded in HYCOM by Alan Wallcraft of NRL. The user also has the option of relaxing nearsurface temperature or salinity to climatology.

### 8.1.2 Diapycnal diffusivity in the ocean interior

Model variables are decomposed into mean (denoted by an overbar) and turbulent (denoted by a prime) components. Diapycnal diffusivities and viscosity parameterized in the ocean interior as follows:

$$\overline{w'\theta'} = -\nu_\theta \frac{\partial \bar{\theta}}{\partial z}, \quad \overline{w'S'} = -\nu_S \frac{\partial \bar{S}}{\partial z}, \quad \overline{w'\mathbf{v}'} = -\nu_m \frac{\partial \bar{\mathbf{v}}}{\partial z}, \quad (119)$$

where  $(\nu_\theta, \nu_S, \nu_m)$  are the interior diffusivities of potential temperature, salinity (which includes other scalars), and momentum (viscosity), respectively. Interior diffusivity/viscosity is assumed to consist of three components, which is illustrated here for potential temperature:

$$\nu_\theta = \nu_\theta^s + \nu_\theta^w + \nu_\theta^d, \quad (120)$$

where  $\nu_\theta^s$  is the contribution of resolved shear instability,  $\nu_\theta^w$  is the contribution of unresolved shear instability due to the background internal wave field, and  $\nu_\theta^d$  is the contribution of double diffusion. Only the first two processes contribute to viscosity.

The contribution of shear instability is parameterized in terms of the gradient Richardson number calculated at model interfaces:

$$Ri_g = \frac{N^2}{\left(\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial z}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial \bar{v}}{\partial z}\right)^2}, \quad (121)$$

where mixing is triggered when  $Ri_g = Ri_0 < 0.7$ . Vertical derivatives are estimated at model interfaces as follows: Given model layer  $k$  bounded by interfaces  $k$  and  $k+1$ , the vertical derivative of  $\bar{u}$  at interface  $k$  is estimated as

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial z} = \frac{\bar{u}^{k-1} - \bar{u}^k}{0.5 * (\delta h^k + \delta h^{k-1})} \quad (122)$$

where the denominator contains the thickness of layers  $k$  and  $k-1$ . The contribution of shear instability is the same for  $\theta$  diffusivity,  $S$  diffusivity, and viscosity ( $\nu^s = \nu_\theta^s = \nu_S^s = \nu_m^s$ ), and is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\nu^s}{\nu^0} &= 1 & Ri_g < 0 \\ \frac{\nu^s}{\nu^0} &= \left[1 - \left(\frac{Ri_g}{Ri_0}\right)^2\right]^P & 0 < Ri_g < Ri_0, \\ \frac{\nu^s}{\nu^0} &= 0 & Ri_g > Ri_0 \end{aligned} \quad (123)$$

where  $\nu^0 = 50 \times 10^{-4} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $Ri_0 = 0.7$ , and  $P = 3$ .

The diffusivity that results from unresolved background internal wave shear is given by

$$\nu_\theta^w = \nu_S^w = 0.1 \times 10^{-4} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}. \quad (124)$$

Based on the analysis of Peters *et al.* (1988), Large *et al.* (1994) determined that viscosity should be an order of magnitude larger:

$$\nu_m^w = 1.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}. \quad (125)$$

Regions where double diffusive processes are important are identified using the double diffusion density ratio calculated at model interfaces:

$$R_\rho = \frac{\alpha \frac{\partial \bar{\theta}}{\partial z}}{\beta \frac{\partial \bar{S}}{\partial z}}, \quad (126)$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the thermodynamic expansion coefficients for temperature and salinity, respectively. For salt fingering (warm, salty water overlying cold, fresh water), salinity/scalar diffusivity is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\nu_S^d}{\nu_f} &= \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{R_\rho - 1}{R_\rho^0 - 1} \right)^2 \right]^P & 1.0 < R_\rho < R_\rho^0 \\ \frac{\nu_S^d}{\nu_f} &= 0 & R_\rho \geq R_\rho^0 \end{aligned} \quad (127)$$

and temperature diffusivity is given by:

$$\nu_\theta^d = 0.7 \nu_S^d, \quad (128)$$

where  $\nu_f = 10 \times 10^{-4} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $R_\rho^0 = 1.9$ , and  $P = 3$ . For diffusive convection, temperature diffusivity is given by:

$$\frac{\nu_\theta^d}{\nu} = 0.909 \exp \left\{ 4.6 \exp \left[ -0.54 \left( R_\rho^{-1} - 1 \right) \right] \right\}, \quad (129)$$

where  $\nu$  is the molecular viscosity for temperature, while salinity/scalar diffusivity is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} \nu_S^d &= \nu_\theta^d \left( 1.85 - 0.85 R_\rho^{-1} \right) R_\rho & 0.5 \leq R_\rho \leq 1 \\ \nu_S^d &= \nu_\theta^d (0.15 R_\rho) & R_\rho < 0.5 \end{aligned} \quad (130)$$

### 8.1.3 Surface boundary layer thickness

Diagnosis of boundary layer thickness  $h_b$  is based on the bulk Richardson number

$$Ri_b = \frac{(B_r - B) d}{(\bar{\mathbf{v}}_r - \bar{\mathbf{v}})^2 + V_t^2} \quad (131)$$

where  $B$  is buoyancy,  $d$  is depth, the subscript  $r$  denotes reference values, and where the two terms in the denominator represent the influence of resolved vertical shear and unresolved turbulent velocity shear, respectively. Reference values are averaged over the depth range  $\varepsilon d$ , where  $\varepsilon = 0.1$ . At depth  $d = h_b$ , the reference depth  $\varepsilon h_b$  represents the

thickness of the surface layer where Monin-Obukhov similarity theory applies. In practice, if model layer 1 is more than 7.5m thick, reference values in (131) are set to layer 1 values. Otherwise, averaging is performed over depth range  $\varepsilon d$ .

The surface boundary layer thickness (which is distinct from mixed layer thickness) is the depth range over which turbulent boundary layer eddies can penetrate before becoming stable relative to the local buoyancy and velocity. It is estimated as the minimum depth at which  $Ri_b$  exceeds the critical Richardson number  $Ri_c = 0.3$ . The Richardson number  $Ri_b$  is estimated in (131) as a layer variable, and thus assumed to represent the Richardson number at the middle depth of each layer. Moving downward from the surface,  $Ri_b$  is calculated for each layer. When the first layer is reached where  $Ri_b > 0.3$ ,  $h_b$  is estimated by linear interpolation between the central depths of that layer and the layer above.

The unresolved turbulent velocity shear in the denominator of (131) is estimated from

$$V_t^2 = \frac{C_s (-\beta_T)^{1/2}}{Ri_c \kappa^2} (c_s \varepsilon)^{-1/2} d N w_s, \quad (132)$$

where  $C_s$  is a constant between 1 and 2,  $\beta_T$  is the ratio of entrainment buoyancy flux to surface buoyancy flux,  $\kappa = 0.4$  is von Karman's constant, and  $w_s$  is the salinity/scalar turbulent velocity scale. The latter scale is estimated using

$$\begin{aligned} w_s &= \kappa (a_S u_*^3 + c_S \kappa \sigma w_*^3)^{1/3} \rightarrow \kappa (c_S \kappa \sigma)^{1/3} w_* & \sigma < \varepsilon \\ w_s &= \kappa (a_S u_*^3 + c_S \kappa \varepsilon w_*^3)^{1/3} \rightarrow \kappa (c_S \kappa \varepsilon)^{1/3} w_* & \varepsilon \leq \sigma < 1 \end{aligned} \quad (133)$$

where  $a_x$  and  $c_x$  are constants,  $w_* = (-B_f/h)^{1/3}$  is the convective velocity scale with  $B_f$  being the surface buoyancy flux, and  $\sigma = d/h_b$ . Expressions to the right of the arrows represent the convective limit. In HYCOM,  $w_s$  values are stored in a two-dimensional lookup table as functions of  $u_*^3$  and  $\sigma w_*^3$  to reduce calculations.

If the surface forcing is stabilizing, the diagnosed value of  $h_b$  is required to be smaller than both the Ekman length scale  $h_E = 0.7u_* / f$  and the Monin-Obukhov length  $L$ .

#### 8.1.4 Surface boundary layer diffusivity

After calculating interior diapycnal diffusivity at model interfaces and estimating  $h_b$ , surface boundary layer diffusivity/viscosity profiles are calculated at model interfaces and smoothly matched to the interior diffusivities and viscosity. Boundary layer diffusivities and viscosity are parameterized as follows:

$$\overline{w'\theta'} = -K_\theta \left( \frac{\partial \bar{\theta}}{\partial z} + \gamma_\theta \right), \quad \overline{w'S'} = -K_S \left( \frac{\partial \bar{S}}{\partial z} + \gamma_S \right), \quad \overline{w'\mathbf{v}'} = -K_m \left( \frac{\partial \bar{\mathbf{v}}}{\partial z} \right), \quad (134)$$

where  $\gamma_\theta, \gamma_S$  are nonlocal transport terms. The diffusivity/viscosity profiles are parameterized as

$$K_\theta(\sigma) = h_b w_\theta(\sigma) G_\theta(\sigma), \quad K_S(\sigma) = h_b w_S(\sigma) G_S(\sigma), \quad K_m(\sigma) = h_b w_m(\sigma) G_m(\sigma), \quad (135)$$

where  $G$  is a smooth shape function represented by a third-order polynomial function

$$G(\sigma) = a_0 + a_1\sigma + a_2\sigma^2 + a_3\sigma^3 \quad (136)$$

that is determined separately for each model variable. The salinity/scalar velocity scale  $w_S$  is estimated using (133). The potential temperature and momentum velocity scales  $w_\theta, w_m$  are also estimated from equations analogous to (133), but with the two constants replaced by  $a_\theta, c_\theta$  and  $a_m, c_m$ , respectively. Since turbulent eddies do not cross the ocean surface, all  $K$  coefficients are zero there, which requires that  $a_0 = 0$ . The remaining coefficients of the shape function for a given variable are chosen to satisfy requirements of Monin-Obukhov similarity theory, and also to insure that the resulting value and first vertical derivative of the boundary layer  $K$ -profile match the value and first derivative of the interior  $\nu$  profile for the same variable calculated using (120) through (125) and (126) through (130).

Application of this procedure is illustrated here for potential temperature only. The matching yields

$$G_\theta(1) = \frac{\nu_\theta(h_b)}{h_b w_\theta(119)} \quad (137)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} G_\theta(1) = -\frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \nu_\theta(h_b)}{w_\theta(1)} - \frac{\nu_\theta(h_b) \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} w_\theta(1)}{h w_\theta^2(1)}$$

After determining the coefficients in (136), the  $K$  profile is calculated using

$$K_\theta = h_b w_\theta \sigma [1 + \sigma G_\theta(\sigma)], \quad (138)$$

where

$$G_\theta(\sigma) = (\sigma - 2) + (3 - 2\sigma) G_\theta(1) + (\sigma - 1) \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} G_\theta(1). \quad (139)$$

At model interfaces within the surface boundary layer, the  $K$  profile for potential temperature is provided by (138). At model interfaces below the boundary layer, the  $K$  profile equals the interior diffusivity ( $K_\theta = \nu_\theta$ ).

The nonlocal flux terms in (134) kick in when the surface forcing is destabilizing. The KPP model parameterizes nonlocal flux only for scalar variables. Although nonlocal fluxes may also be significant for momentum, the form that these fluxes take is presently not known. (Large *et al.*, 1994). The nonlocal fluxes for scalar variables are parameterized as

$$\gamma_\theta = C_s \frac{\gamma_\theta = 0 \quad \gamma_s = 0 \quad \zeta \geq 0}{\frac{w'\theta'_0 + w'\theta'_R}{w_\theta(\sigma)h_b}} \quad \gamma_s = \frac{w'S'_0}{w_s(\sigma)h} \quad \zeta < 0 \quad (140)$$

where  $\zeta$  is a stability parameter equal to  $d/L$  and  $L$  is the Monin-Obukhov length. The terms  $\overline{w'\theta'_0}$  and  $\overline{w'S'_0}$  are surface fluxes while the term  $\overline{w'\theta'_R}$  is the contribution of penetrating shortwave radiation.

### 8.1.5 Vertical mixing

The vertical diffusion equation is solved at each model grid point after model variables have been updated by the continuity equation, horizontal advection and diffusion, momentum equation, and surface fluxes, and is thus treated as a purely one-dimensional problem with zero-flux boundary conditions at the surface and bottom. In HYCOM 2.0.01, this equation is solved for the full KPP mixing algorithm, and also for the KPP-like interior diapycnal-mixing algorithm when chosen for use with the Kraus-Turner mixed layer model.

Decomposing model variables into mean (denoted by an overbar) and turbulent (denoted by a prime) components, the vertical diffusion equations to be solved for potential temperature, salinity, and vector momentum are

$$\frac{\partial \bar{\theta}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \overline{w'\theta'} \quad \frac{\partial \bar{S}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \overline{w'S'} \quad \frac{\partial \bar{\mathbf{v}}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \overline{w'\mathbf{v}'} . \quad (141)$$

Boundary layer diffusivities and viscosity are parameterized as follows:

$$\overline{w'\theta'} = -K_\theta \left( \frac{\partial \bar{\theta}}{\partial z} + \gamma_\theta \right), \quad \overline{w'S'} = -K_S \left( \frac{\partial \bar{S}}{\partial z} + \gamma_S \right), \quad \overline{w'\mathbf{v}'} = -K_m \left( \frac{\partial \bar{\mathbf{v}}}{\partial z} + \gamma_m \right), \quad (142)$$

where the  $\gamma$  terms represent nonlocal fluxes. For example, the KPP model includes nonlocal terms for  $\theta$  and  $S$ , but not for momentum. The following solution procedure is valid for any mixing model in HYCOM that calculates the diffusivity/viscosity profiles at model interfaces, whether or not nonlocal terms are parameterized.

The following matrix problems are formulated and solved:

$$\mathbf{A}_T \Theta^{t+1} = \Theta^t + \mathbf{H}_\Theta \quad \mathbf{A}_S \mathbf{S}^{t+1} = \mathbf{S}^t + \mathbf{H}_S \quad \mathbf{A}_M \mathbf{M}^{t+1} = \mathbf{M}^t + \mathbf{H}_M, \quad (143)$$

where superscripts  $t, t+1$  denote model times, and  $\mathbf{M}$  is the vector of a momentum component, either  $u$  or  $v$ . The matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  are tri-diagonal coefficient matrices, while the vectors  $\mathbf{H}_T$  and  $\mathbf{H}_S$  represent the nonlocal flux terms. Given  $K$  model layers with nonzero thickness, where an individual layer  $k$  of thickness  $\delta p_k$  is bounded above and below by interfaces located at pressures  $p_k$  and  $p_{k+1}$ , the matrix  $\mathbf{A}_S$  is determined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A}_S^{1,1} &= \left( 1 + \Omega_{S1}^+ \right) \\ \mathbf{A}_S^{k,k-1} &= -\Omega_{S_k}^- & 2 \leq k \leq K \\ \mathbf{A}_S^{k,k} &= \left( 1 + \Omega_{S_k}^- + \Omega_{S_k}^+ \right) & 2 \leq k \leq K \\ \mathbf{A}_S^{k,k+1} &= -\Omega_{S_k}^+ & 1 \leq k \leq K-1 \end{aligned} , \quad (144)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega_{Sk}^- &= \frac{\Delta t}{\delta p_k} \frac{K_S(p_k)}{(p_{k+0.5} - p_{k-0.5})} \\ \Omega_{Sk}^+ &= \frac{\Delta t}{\delta p_k} \frac{K_S(p_{k+1})}{(p_{k+1.5} - p_{k+0.5})}\end{aligned}, \quad (145)$$

where  $p_{k+0.5}$  represents the central pressure depth of model layer  $k$ . The nonlocal flux arrays are calculated using

$$\begin{aligned}H_{S1} &= \frac{\Delta t}{\delta p_1} K_S(p_{k+1}) \gamma_S(p_{k+1}) \\ H_{Sk} &= \frac{\Delta t}{\delta p_k} [K_S(p_{k+1}) \gamma_S(p_{k+1}) - K_S(p_k) \gamma_S(p_k)] \quad 2 \leq k \leq K .\end{aligned} \quad (146)$$

The solution is then found by inverting the tri-diagonal matrix **A**. After solving the equation for all variables at the pressure grid points (including velocity components interpolated from the momentum grid points), the KPP procedure is repeated beginning with equation (119) using the new profiles of all variables. The user can choose how many of these iterations are performed. In practice, two iterations are generally found to be adequate. Mixed layer thickness is diagnosed at the pressure grid points based through vertical interpolation to the depth where density exceeds the surface layer density by a prescribed amount.

After completing the mixing at pressure grid points, mixing is performed at the momentum grid points. Instead of repeating the entire KPP procedure, the  $K_m$  profiles estimated at the pressure grid points during the final iteration is horizontally interpolated to the  $u$  and  $v$  grid points, then the vertical diffusion equation is solved.

## 8.2 Usage

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 8.2.1 Order of Operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 8.2.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 8.3 Variables

### 8.3.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

Notation in **mxkpp.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

**8.3.2 Local variables***Subroutine mxkpp*

delp                    Cushion function argument.  
i, j                    Array indices.  
k                        Layer index.  
l                        Loop index.  
m, n                    Time step indices.  
sigmlj

*Subroutine mxkppaj, mxkppbj, and mxkppcj*

i, j                    Array indices.  
l                        Loop index.  
m, n                    Time step indices.

*Subroutines mxkppaij, mxkppbij, mxkppcij, and mxkppcijv*

aa1, aa2, aa3  
alfadt(kdm+1)        T contribution to density jump.  
betads(kdm+1)        S contribution to density jump.  
bfsfc                   Surface buoyancy forcing.  
blmc(kdm+1,3)        Boundary layer mixing coefficients.  
bref                    Nearsurface reference buoyancy.  
bvsq  
case                    = 1 in case A; = 0 in case B  
dat1(3)                Derivative of shape functions at dnorm = 1.  
dbloc(kdm+1)        Buoyancy jump across interface.  
del

<code>delta</code>	Fraction hbl lies between zgrid neighbors.
<code>diffdd</code>	Double diffusion diffusivity scale.
<code>diffm(kdm+1)</code>	
<code>diffs(kdm+1)</code>	
<code>difft(kdm+1)</code>	
<code>difsh</code>	
<code>difsp</code>	
<code>difth</code>	
<code>diftp</code>	
<code>dkm1(3)</code>	Boundary layer diffusions at nbl-1 level.
<code>dkmp2</code>	
<code>dnorm</code>	Normalized depth.
<code>dsaln</code>	Variation $\Delta S$ of salinity in the mixed layer.
<code>dstar</code>	
<code>dtemp</code>	Variation $\Delta T$ of Temperature in the mixed layer.
<code>dvdzdn</code>	
<code>dvdzup</code>	
<code>dvsq(kdm)</code>	Squared current shear for bulk Richardson number.
<code>dzb(kdm)</code>	
<code>f1</code>	Function of Rig.
<code>fri</code>	Function of Rig.
<code>gat1(3)</code>	Shape functions at $dnorm = 1$ .
<code>ghat(kdm+1)</code>	
<code>ghatflux</code>	
<code>gm</code>	
<code>gs</code>	

gt  
hbl                   Boundary layer depth.  
hblmax  
hblmin  
hm(kdm)  
hmonob  
hwide(kdm)           Layer thicknesses in m.  
i, j                   Array indices.  
iter                   Iteration loop index.  
jrlv  
k, ka, kb             Layer index.  
k1, k2                Bulk Richardson number indices.  
kmask  
ksave  
m, n                   Time step indices.  
nbl                    Layer containing boundary layer base.  
nlayer  
prandtl               Prandtl number.  
presu, presv  
q  
ratio  
rhs(kdm)             Right-hand-side terms.  
rib(2)                Bulk Richardson number.  
rigr                   Local Richardson number.  
ritop(kdm)            Numerator of bulk Richardson number.  
rrho                   Double diffusion parameter.

`s1dn(kdm+1)`  
`s1do(kdm+1)`  
`sflux1`  
`shsq(kdm+1)`      Velocity shear squared.  
`sigg`  
`sold(kdm+1)`      Old salinity.  
`stable`            = 1 in stable forcing; = 0 in unstable.  
`swfrac(kdm+1)`    Fractional surface shortwave radiation flux.  
`swfrm1`            Fractional surface sw rad flux at ml base.  
`t1dn(kdm+1)`  
`t1do(kdm+1)`  
`tcc(kdm)`            Central coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
`tcl(kdm)`            Lower coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
`tcu(kdm)`            Upper coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
`thold(kdm+1)`  
`told(kdm+1)`      Old temperature.  
`tr1dn(kdm+1)`  
`tr1do(kdm+1)`  
`tri(kdm,0:1)`      Dt/dz/dz factors in a tridiagonal matrix.  
`u1dn(kdm+1)`  
`u1do(kdm+1)`  
`uold(kdm+1)`  
`uref, vref, zref`    Nearsurface reference u, v, z.  
`v1dn(kdm+1)`  
`v1do(kdm+1)`  
`vctyh`

visep  
vold(kdm+1)  
vtsq  
wm                    Momentum velocity scale.  
ws                    Scalar velocity scale.  
wz  
zm(kdm+1)

*Subroutine wscale*

bfsfc                Surface buoyancy forcing.  
dnorm                Normalized depth.  
i, j                  Array indices.  
iz  
izp1  
ju  
jup1  
nustar  
nzehat  
ucube  
udiff  
ufrac  
wam  
was  
wbm  
wbs  
wm                    Momentum velocity scale.

wmt                    Momentum velocity scale table.  
ws                     Scalar velocity scale.  
wst                    Scalar velocity scale table.  
zdiff  
zehat  
zfrac  
zlevel

#### 8.4 Procedures

*Subroutines*        mxkpp, mxkppaj, mxkppbj, mxkppcj, mxkppaij, mxkppbij, mxkppcij,  
                      mxkppcijv, wscale

## 9 Generalized Vertical Coordinates : hybgen.f

### 9.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

The generalized vertical coordinate adjustment algorithm implemented in HYCOM 2.0.01 is designed so that the isopycnic vertical coordinates present in the ocean interior transition smoothly to  $z$  coordinates in nearsurface, well-mixed regions, to sigma (terrain-following) coordinates in shallow water regions, and back to level coordinates in very shallow water to prevent layers from becoming too thin.

#### 9.1.1 Vertical coordinate remapping

The HYCOM vertical coordinate adjustment in the open ocean works as follows: Let  $\alpha_k > \alpha_{k+1}$  where  $\alpha$  is specific volume. Interfaces are labeled such that interface  $k$  is the upper interface of layer  $k$ . Consider three consecutive isopycnic layers labeled 0, 1, and 2 in a stratified water column. Suppose that  $\alpha_1$  differs from its isopycnic reference value  $\hat{\alpha}_1$ . To restore isopycnic conditions, it is necessary to re-discretize the water column in a manner that preserves the overall height of the column, represented by the integral  $\int \alpha dp$ , while changing  $\alpha_1$  to  $\hat{\alpha}_1$ . Conservation of the integral requires that one or more layer interfaces must be relocated to different pressure levels. To adjust the density in layer 1, one interface will be moved in the spirit of the “donor cell” transport scheme. If layer 1 is too dense ( $\alpha_1 < \hat{\alpha}_1$ ), the upper interface is moved upward to transfer less-dense water from layer 0 to layer 1. If layer 1 is too light ( $\alpha_1 > \hat{\alpha}_1$ ), the lower interface is moved downward to transfer denser water from layer 2 to layer 1. This method does not work for the model layer in contact with the bottom if it is too light. A special algorithm was included to handle this case by extruding water into the layer above.

In HYCOM, the user specifies  $n_{hyb}$ , the number of hybrid layers. Interfaces bounding the upper  $n_{hyb}$  layers are adjusted according to the algorithm described below. Deeper layers are allowed to remain isopycnic.

#### Case 1: $\alpha_1 > \hat{\alpha}_1$

This is the case where the upper interface is moved and mass is exchanged between layers 0 and 1. Conservation of  $\int \alpha dp$  requires

$$\alpha_0(p_1 - p_0) + \alpha_1(p_2 - p_1) = \alpha_0(\hat{p}_1 - p_0) + \hat{\alpha}_1(p_2 - \hat{p}_1), \quad (147)$$

where  $\hat{p}_1$  is the pressure of the upper interface after re-discretization. Solving (147) for  $\hat{p}_1$  yields the expression

$$\hat{p}_1 = \frac{p_1(\alpha_0 - \alpha_1) + p_2(\alpha_1 - \hat{\alpha}_1)}{\alpha_0 - \hat{\alpha}_1}. \quad (148)$$

Since the weight assigned to  $p_2$  is negative, (148) will not necessarily yield a solution  $\hat{p}_1 > p_0$  for large differences between  $\alpha_1$  and  $\hat{\alpha}_1$ . To maintain the minimum thickness of

layer 0,  $\widehat{p}_1$  is replaced by

$$\widetilde{p}_1 = \max(\widehat{p}_1, p_0 + \Delta_0), \quad (149)$$

where  $\Delta_0$  is a specified minimum layer thickness. Of course, moving the interface to  $\widetilde{p}$  instead of  $\widehat{p}$  no longer permits isopycnic conditions to be restored.

Following Bleck and Benjamin (1993), the user chooses the absolute minimum thickness  $\delta_0$ . The actual minimum thickness  $\Delta_0$  is then calculated in a manner that insures a smooth transition between the isopycnic and non-isopycnic domains. The function  $\Delta_0$  is determined by a continuously differentiable ‘‘cushion’’ function, which for large positive arguments  $\Delta p \equiv \widehat{p}_1 - p_0$  returns the argument  $\Delta p$  (meaning that  $\widetilde{p}_1 = \widehat{p}_1$ ) and for large negative arguments returns  $\delta_0$ :

$$\Delta_0 = \begin{cases} \delta_0 \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{\Delta p}{3\delta_0} \right) + \left( \frac{\Delta p}{3\delta_0} \right)^2 \right] & \text{if } \Delta p \leq 3\delta_0 \\ \Delta p & \text{if } \Delta p > 3\delta_0 \end{cases} \quad (150)$$

In practice, if temperature and salinity are fluxed across the relocated interfaces, then perfect restoration of isopycnic conditions is not possible ( $\widetilde{\alpha}_1 \neq \widehat{\alpha}_1$ ). In rare instances, the change in  $\alpha_1$  will not even have the expected sign. For example, in model layers just beneath the Mediterranean salt tongue, cases were observed where raising interface 1 unexpectedly decreased  $\alpha_1$ . Repeated application of the vertical coordinate adjustment algorithm then acts to drive  $\alpha_1$  farther from its reference value and produces unacceptably large vertical coordinate migration. This problem can be exacerbated when temperature and salinity are advected. Code was included to suppress the vertical coordinate adjustment when the change in  $\alpha_1$  does not have the expected sign. Although this prevents  $\alpha_1$  from diverging rapidly from its reference value, restoration to its reference value is not possible. The only way to completely avoid this problem is to adjust temperature and density, or salinity and density.

Even without this problem, substantial deviations from layer reference density can still occur when temperature and salinity are adjusted. An iterative procedure was therefore included to insure in most cases that  $|\widetilde{\alpha}_1 - \widehat{\alpha}_1|$  is smaller than a prescribed tolerance after applying the vertical coordinate adjustment algorithm. This iterative procedure works as follows: After  $\widehat{p}_1$  is estimated from (148), changes in temperature and salinity resulting from fluxes across the relocated vertical coordinate are estimated, then  $\widetilde{\alpha}_1$  is estimated from the model equation of state. If it is not within the required tolerance, then  $\widehat{p}_1$  and  $\widetilde{\alpha}_1$  are again updated and the tolerance test applied. A maximum of five iterations is performed. Specific details are provided later.

Case 1 has two sub-cases that must be treated separately:

**Case 1a:**  $\widetilde{p}_1 < p_1$

In this case, the upper interface is raised, allowing lighter water to increase  $\alpha_1$  to a

value  $\tilde{\alpha}_1$  that is closer, but not necessarily equal to, the reference value  $\hat{\alpha}_1$ . The estimate of  $\tilde{\alpha}_1$  is obtained by substituting tildes for carats in (147):

$$\tilde{\alpha}_1 = \frac{\alpha_1(p_2 - p_1) + \alpha_0(p_1 - \tilde{p}_1)}{p_2 - \tilde{p}_1}. \quad (151)$$

If the user has chosen to flux  $\alpha$  and salinity or  $\alpha$  and temperature, further modification of  $\alpha$  is unnecessary. If the user has chosen to mix temperature and salinity, however, the next step is to determine if the actual change in  $\alpha$  will have the expected sign, and if  $|\tilde{\alpha}_1 - \hat{\alpha}_1|$  is within the desired tolerance. The new temperature value that will result from raising the interface is

$$\tilde{T}_1 = \frac{p_1 - \hat{p}_1}{p_2 - \hat{p}_1}(T_0 - T_1). \quad (152)$$

The new salinity  $\tilde{S}_1$  is estimated in the same manner, and then a new estimate of  $\tilde{\alpha}_1$  is made using the model equation of state. If the change in  $\alpha_1$  has the wrong sign, then  $p_1$  is not adjusted. Otherwise, If  $|\tilde{\alpha}_1 - \hat{\alpha}_1|$  exceeds the required tolerance, then  $\hat{p}_1$  is recalculated using

$$\hat{p}_1 = \hat{p}_1 + \frac{\tilde{\alpha}_1 - \hat{\alpha}_1}{\alpha_0 - \hat{\alpha}_1}(p_2 - \hat{p}_1) \quad (153)$$

In this step,  $\hat{p}_1$  is not permitted to exceed  $p_1$ . The resulting specific volume  $\tilde{\alpha}_1$  is then re-calculated, and if the prescribed tolerance is not achieved, then  $\hat{p}_1$  is re-calculated by the same procedure. The procedure is repeated up to five times if necessary. If the upward relocation of interface 1 is sufficiently limited by an interior blocking layer above, then the special algorithm to break this logjam is invoked.

**Case 1b:**  $\tilde{p}_1 > p_1$

In this case, the upper interface must be lowered to preserve the minimum thickness of layer 0. Conservation of  $\int \alpha dp$  then leads to

$$\tilde{\alpha}_0 = \frac{\alpha_1(\tilde{p}_1 - p_0) + \alpha_0(p_1 - p_0)}{\tilde{p}_1 - p_0}. \quad (154)$$

The preservation of minimum layer thickness by increasing the thickness of layer 0 overrides all attempts to restore isopycnic conditions. Consequently, none of the special algorithms described for case 1a are invoked.

**Case 2:**  $\alpha_1 > \hat{\alpha}_1$

This is the case where the lower interface is moved downward and mass from layer 2 is entrained into layer 1. Conservation of  $\int \alpha dp$  requires

$$\alpha_1(p_2 - p_1) + \alpha_2(p_3 - p_2) = \hat{\alpha}_1(\hat{p}_2 - p_1) + \alpha_2(p_3 - \hat{p}_2). \quad (155)$$

The lower interface must be relocated to

$$\hat{p}_2 = \frac{p_1(\hat{\alpha}_1 - \alpha_1) + p_2(\alpha_1 - \alpha_2)}{\hat{\alpha}_1 - \alpha_2}. \quad (156)$$

To maintain the minimum thickness of layer 2  $\hat{p}_2$  is replaced by

$$\tilde{p}_2 = \min(\hat{p}_2, p_3 - \Delta_2), \quad (157)$$

where  $\Delta_2$  is determined from the cushion function

$$\Delta_2 = \begin{cases} \delta_2 \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{\Delta p}{3\delta_2} \right) + \left( \frac{\Delta p}{3\delta_2} \right)^2 \right] & \text{if } \Delta p \leq 3\delta_2 \\ \Delta p & \text{if } \Delta p > 3\delta_2 \end{cases} \quad (158)$$

with  $\Delta p \equiv p_3 - \hat{p}_2$ . The iterative algorithm to improve restoration of isopycnic conditions is also executed for this case when temperature and salinity are adjusted. This algorithm is executed throughout the water column with the exception of the deepest layer with nonzero thickness, which intersects the bottom. The following special case is executed for this layer.

### Case 2a: $\alpha_1 > \hat{\alpha}_1$ , Where Layer 1 is the Bottom Layer

Since interface 2 cannot move downward in this case, it is necessary to use constraint (147) and move interface 1 downward to restore isopycnic conditions in layer 1. To achieve this goal, the water in layer 1 must be restratified into two sublayers such that the density of the upper sublayer exactly equals the density of layer 0, the density of the lower sublayer is close to the desired reference density, and the density averaged over the two sublayers equals the original layer density. Given

$$q = \frac{\alpha_1 - \hat{\alpha}_1}{\alpha_0 - \hat{\alpha}_1},$$

interface 1 is relocated using

$$\hat{p}_1 = p_1 + q(p_2 - p_1). \quad (159)$$

Thermodynamical variables in the lower sublayer are then calculated using

$$\hat{T}_1 = T_1 - \left( \frac{q}{1 - q} \right) (T_1 - T_0) \quad (160)$$

for temperature, and using the analogous equation for salinity and density. Again, two of the thermodynamical variables are diagnosed using (160) with the third estimated from the equation of state. The closeness of lower sublayer density to the reference density is

sacrificed if necessary to achieve two goals: 1) to prevent the thickness of layer 1 from decreasing by more than 50% using

$$\tilde{p}_1 = \min(\hat{p}_1, p_2 - \Delta_2), \quad (161)$$

where  $\Delta_2 = (p_2 - p_1) / 2$ , and 2) to prevent runaway changes in temperature and salinity using

$$|T_1 - T_0| \leq |T_0 - T_{-1}| \quad (162)$$

for temperature and the analogous equation for salinity.

### 9.1.2 Adjustment of vertical coordinates in shallow water regions

A very simple scheme is used to insure the transition from the open ocean, where a non-isopycnic coordinate domain exists above an isopycnic coordinate ocean interior, to a sigma coordinate domain in shallow water regions and a level coordinate domain in very shallow regions. When the user specifies the minimum thickness  $\delta_n$  for each model layer  $n$  at grid points where the ocean is sufficiently deep, the coordinate adjustment algorithm produces the non-isopycnic z coordinate domain overlying an isopycnic domain as described previously. Without changes in this algorithm, first the isopycnic coordinates, then the non-isopycnic coordinates, will intersect the bottom towards shallower water and not provide optimum vertical resolution in shallow water regions.

To insure the proper coordinate transition toward shallower water, the user specifies the number of model layers  $N_s$  that are to become sigma coordinates along with the absolute minimum thickness  $\delta_{\min}$  that is permitted for the sigma coordinates. The minimum thickness of sigma coordinates is given by

$$\delta_s = \frac{D}{N_s} \quad (163)$$

where  $D$  is the total water depth. A new minimum thickness for each model layer is then calculated using

$$\tilde{\delta}_n = \max[\delta_{\min}, \min(\delta_n, \delta_s)]. \quad (164)$$

In a given model layer, the transition to sigma coordinates occurs where the water depth becomes sufficiently shallow to make  $\delta_s < \delta_n$ . The transition back to level coordinates occurs where the water depth becomes sufficiently shallow to make  $\delta_s < \delta_{\min}$ . Thus, the proper coordinate transformation is assured if  $\delta_n$  is replaced by  $\tilde{\delta}_n$  before executing the vertical coordinate adjustment.

### 9.1.3 Adjustment of temperature, salinity, density, and momentum

The adjustment of thermodynamical variables and momentum ideally must conserve their vertically averaged values and, for the thermodynamical variables, restore density as close

to the isopycnic reference value as possible. The algorithm included in HYCOM remaps each variable from the old to the new vertical grid. It satisfies these two conditions, and furthermore does not depend on the direction (top to bottom or bottom to top) in which it is executed, in contrast to a pure donor cell scheme.

The user has the option of adjusting any two of the thermodynamical variables and diagnosing the third using the equation of state. When the hybrid coordinate generator is called, it is executed separately at each grid point. Thermodynamical variables are adjusted first at the pressure grid points. Before adjusting the vertical coordinates, the initial one-dimensional profiles of temperature, salinity, and density, plus the one-dimensional array of interface pressures, are saved. If the full Kraus-Turner mixed layer model is selected, the model layer containing the mixed layer base is divided into two sublayers, and the mixed layer base is temporally considered to be an additional vertical coordinate. The sublayers above and below the mixed layer base are thus temporarily considered to be two model layers. Thermodynamical variables in the two sublayers are estimated using the “unmixing” algorithm described in the Kraus Turner Model Section.

Once the profiles are saved, the vertical adjustment of vertical coordinates is performed at the pressure grid points as outlined in the previous sections. Each variable is then remapped from the old to the new vertical coordinates as illustrated here for temperature. The interface pressures on the old grid are  $p_m, m = 1, M$  while the pressures on the new adjusted grid are  $\tilde{p}_n, n = 1, N$ , where  $N$  is the number of model layers. Note that  $M = N$  unless the full Kraus-Turner mixed layer model is used, in which case  $M = N + 1$  to account for the two sublayers within the layer containing the mixed layer base. The old temperature profile is mapped onto the new adjusted vertical coordinates using

$$\tilde{T}_n = \frac{1}{\tilde{p}_{n+1} - \tilde{p}_n} \sum_{m=1}^M T_m \{ \max [\tilde{p}_n, \min (p_{m+1}, \tilde{p}_{n+1})] - \min [\tilde{p}_{n+1}, \max (p_m, \tilde{p}_n)] \}. \quad (165)$$

In practice, the summation is performed between  $m = m_1$  to  $m = m_2$  in order to eliminate layers on the old vertical grid that do not overlap layer  $n$  on the new grid.

After adjusting the thermodynamical variables, the momentum components are adjusted to assure that vertically-averaged momentum is conserved at each grid point. The old and new vertical coordinates obtained at pressure grid points are first interpolated to the  $u$  grid points. The adjustment of  $u$  is performed using an equation of the form (165). The same procedure is used to update  $v$  at the  $v$  grid points.

#### 9.1.4 Running HYCOM with isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM Mode)

To facilitate the comparison between HYCOM and MICOM, the capability of running the HYCOM code to mimic MICOM was built into the code. If MICOM mode is selected, the hybrid vertical coordinate adjustment is not performed at all. Vertical mixing is then performed using the same Kraus-Turner mixed layer model and the same interior diapycnal mixing algorithm that were included in MICOM version 2.8. Advection and

diffusion operate on density and salinity in layer 1 (the slab mixed layer), and only on salinity (with temperature diagnosed from the equation of state) in other layers. The user can therefore avoid having to perform the conversions (mesh and units) that would be required to compare HYCOM to MICOM version 2.8.

## 9.2 Usage

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 9.2.1 Order of Operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 9.2.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 9.3 Variables

### 9.3.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

Notation in **hybgen.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 9.3.2 Local variables

*Subroutine hybgen*

i, j	Array indices.
k	Layer index.
l	Loop index.
lpipe_hybgen	Flag to compare two model runs.
m, n	Time step indices.
text*12	Comparison title.

*Subroutine hybgenaj*

cusha, cushb	Cushion function constant.
cushn	Cushion function.

delp	Cushion function argument.
dels, delsm	Change in salinity.
delt, deltm	Change in temperature.
dp0	Cushion function argument.
dp0cum(kdm+1)	
i, j	Array indices.
iter	Iteration loop index.
k, k1, kp	Layer indices.
ksubl	Layer containing the mixed layer base.
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.
p_hat, p_hat0,	
p_hat2, p_hat 3	P hat.
pres(kdm+2)	Pressure profile.
psum, pwidth	Total layer thickness.
q	Scale factor.
qq	Internal function for cushn.
qqmn, qqmx	qq function constant.
qts	Split layer scale factor.
rpsum	1/psum
ssal(kdm+1)	Old salinity profile.
ssum	Salinity profile sum.
thnew	New density.
thsum	Density profile sum.
trsum	Tracer profile sum.
tsum	Temperature profile sum.

ttem(kdm+1)      Old temperature profile.  
tthe(kdm+1)      Old density profile.  
ttrc(kdm+1)      Old tracer profile.

*Subroutine hybgenbj*

i, j              Array indices.  
k, k1, kp        Layer indices.  
ksubl            Layer containing the mixed layer base.  
l                Loop index.  
m, n            Time step indices.  
pres(kdm+2)     Pressure profile.  
psum, pwidth    Total layer thickness.  
q                Scale factor.  
thknss          Layer thickness.  
usum            U-velocity profile sum.  
uu(kdm+1)      U-velocity profile.  
vsum            V-velocity profile sum.  
vv(kdm+1)      V-velocity profile.

#### 9.4 Procedures

Subroutines      **hybgen**

## 10 Kraus-Turner Mixed Layer Model : mxkrta.f or mxkrtb.f

### 10.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

The Kraus-Turner mixed layer is a vertically homogenized slab of water whose depth is diagnosed from the turbulence kinetic energy (TKE) equation converted into a diagnostic equation by setting the time-dependent term to zero; *i.e.*, by assuming a balance between sources and sinks of TKE in the water column. This model has been incorporated in MICOM for many years by designating the uppermost model layer to be a non-isopycnic slab layer. The K-T model was incorporated into HYCOM to facilitate comparisons with MICOM, and to serve as a benchmark for evaluating new mixed layer models, as they are included.

Since the K-T model only governs mixing within the surface mixed layer, the user must also use one of the interior diapycnal mixing algorithms provided in HYCOM (Section 11).

#### 10.1.1 Full K-T model (hybrid coordinates with unmixing)

The greatest difficulty in incorporating a Kraus-Turner mixed layer model within a hybrid coordinate ocean model is to properly handle the mixed layer base (MLB), the depth of which is a model prognostic variable. Since the MICOM slab mixed layer is identically layer 1, the MLB always coincides with a model vertical coordinate. This is not true in a hybrid coordinate model, so special bookkeeping is required to keep track of MLB depth along with discontinuities in thermodynamical and dynamical variables that occur at the MLB. The buoyancy change across the MLB must be known to estimate the contribution of entrainment to the TKE balance, and the magnitude of the discontinuity in a given property must be known to calculate changes in the value of that property within the mixed layer caused by entrainment.

In hybrid coordinates, the model layer containing the MLB, here assumed to be layer  $k$ , can be divided into one sublayer above the MLB that is part of the mixed layer and one sublayer below that is part of the stratified ocean interior. Water properties must be known in both sublayers to quantify discontinuities across the MLB. Since the basic model code tracks only vertically averaged properties within model layers, an algorithm has been added to artificially create estimates of water properties within the two sublayers by “unmixing” the water column. During the development and testing of the unmixing scheme, it became clear that it had to be designed to reduce as much as possible numerically induced property exchanges between the mixed layer and the deeper ocean. This point is illustrated using mixed layer temperature. This temperature equals the average temperature between the surface and the MLB, and is thus the average over model layers 1 through  $k - 1$  plus the upper sublayer of layer  $k$ . If the estimate of upper sublayer temperature generated by the unmixing algorithm is not accurate, neither the mean mixed layer temperature nor the lower sublayer temperature beneath the MLB will be accurate. An inaccurate unmixing algorithm will thus lead to an erroneous flux of temperature across the MLB. In test simulations of the Atlantic Ocean, it was found that model performance

was very sensitive to unmixing errors, particularly at high latitudes. Substantial effort was invested in making the unmixing algorithm as accurate as possible, which eventually improved the realism of model simulations in the high latitude North Atlantic.

Between individual implementations of K-T mixing, water properties in layer  $k$  change due to processes such as horizontal advection, diffusion, and penetrating shortwave radiation. With previous sublayer information lost, it is impossible to generate perfect estimates of upper and lower sublayer variables that do not lead to erroneous property fluxes across the MLB. To reduce this problem as much as possible, the layer number  $k$  containing the mixed layer base, upper sublayer variables, and the averaged variables within model layer  $k$  are saved at the end of the Kraus-Turner mixed layer algorithm. The next time the K-T algorithm is called, the previously saved values of these variables are used to make a best-guess of upper sublayer variables during the unmixing process as illustrated below.

This Kraus-Turner model is implemented as follows: Thermodynamical variables are mixed first at the pressure grid points. A search is conducted to determine the model layer  $k$  that contains the mixed layer base. Temperature and salinity are then averaged over layers 1 through  $k - 1$ . Before proceeding further, convection is performed if necessary. The density associated with the averaged values of temperature and salinity is calculated, and if it is greater than the density of layer  $k$ , the MLB is moved to the base of layer  $k$  (interface  $k+1$ ). Temperature and salinity are then averaged from the surface through layer  $k$ , and if the resulting density is greater than the density of layer  $k + 1$ , the MLB is moved down to interface  $k + 2$ . This process is repeated until a layer with greater density than the mixed layer is encountered. If convection occurs, the MLB will reside on a model interface, so no unmixing is required. In practice, whenever the MLB is located within one centimeter of a model interface, it is moved there and no unmixing is required.

If the MLB is still located within a model layer, the unmixing algorithm is performed. If  $k \neq \hat{k}$ , where  $\hat{k}$  is the model layer that contained the MLB during the previous time step, then the following first guesses are made for upper sublayer temperature and salinity:

$$T_{up} = T_{k-1}, \quad S_{up} = S_{k-1}. \quad (166)$$

If  $k = \hat{k}$ , the following first guesses are made:

$$T_{up} = \hat{T}_{up} + T_k - \hat{T}_k, \quad S_{up} = \hat{S}_{up} + S_k - \hat{S}_k. \quad (167)$$

The upper sublayer variables are therefore assumed to have changed by an amount equal to the change that occurred in the full layer  $k$  variables. Lower sublayer variables are then estimated using

$$T_{dn} = \frac{p_m - p_k}{p_{k+1} - p_m} (T_k - T_{up}) \quad (168)$$

and

$$S_{dn} = \frac{p_m - p_k}{p_{k+1} - p_m} (S_k - S_{up}), \quad (169)$$

where  $p_m$  is the pressure level of the MLB. Spurious extrema of  $T$  and  $S$  are prevented by requiring that  $T_{dn}$  be within the envelope of values defined by  $(T_{up}, T_k, T_{k+1})$  and  $S$  be within the envelope of values defined by  $(S_{up}, S_k, S_{k+1})$ . If  $T_{dn}$  has to be adjusted, then  $T_{up}$  is recomputed using

$$T_{up} - T_{up} + \frac{p_{k+1} - p_m}{p_m - p_k} (T_{dn} - T_k). \quad (170)$$

If  $S_{dn}$  has to be adjusted, then  $S_{up}$  is recomputed using

$$S_{up} - S_{up} + \frac{p_{k+1} - p_m}{p_m - p_k} (S_{dn} - S_k). \quad (171)$$

After the unmixing is completed, the density profile is provided to the K-T TKE algorithm to calculate the new mixed layer depth. There are two possibilities here: First, density could be averaged over the mixed layer to provide a homogeneous slab mixed layer profile with a discontinuity at the mixed layer base. Second, the unmixed density profile above the mixed layer base (including the upper sublayer) could be provided to the K-T TKE algorithm. This turns out to be a significant consideration. Since the previous time step, differential advection and diffusion within the mixed layer results in an inhomogeneous profile in the mixed layer. Homogenizing the mixed layer prior to calling the K-T TKE algorithm then alters the energetics of the mixed layer, and generally leads to a different MLB depth being calculated by the K-T algorithm. Tests conducted in the Atlantic Ocean revealed that providing the inhomogeneous profile to the K-T algorithm improved the realism of the simulated fields, in particular at high latitudes.

Temperature and salinity are homogenized over the maximum of the old and new mixed layer depths, and the surface fluxes are distributed over the new depth. The final step is to store the layer number  $k$  containing the mixed layer base, the upper sublayer temperature and salinity, and the layer  $k$  average temperature and salinity to be used as the old values the next time the K-T algorithm is executed.

Mixing is then performed for momentum components on the  $u$  and  $v$  grid points. Momentum is mixed from the surface to the maximum of the old and new mixed layer thickness, denoted by  $\tilde{p}_m$ , that is interpolated from pressure grid points. If  $\tilde{p}_m$  is within one centimeter of a model interface  $k + 1$  at a  $u$  grid point, then  $u$  is homogenized from the surface through layer  $k$ . If the MLB is located in layer  $k$ , unmixing is performed. It was found that model simulations are not sensitive to the accuracy of the estimates of  $u$  and  $v$  in the two sublayers. For both  $u$  and  $v$ , the first guess for the upper sublayer value is the value in layer  $k - 1$ .

The present model includes optional penetrating shortwave radiation as described in Section 8.1.1. If this option is not selected, all shortwave radiation is assumed to be absorbed in the mixed layer.

Another important consideration is that the mixed layer base is a material surface that can be advected by the flow field. This advection is partly accounted for by an algorithm added to the model continuity equation. If the MLB is contained within layer  $k$ , and model interfaces  $k$  and  $k + 1$  are adjusted vertically during solution of the continuity equation by  $\delta p_k$  and  $\delta p_{k+1}$ , respectively, the Kraus-Turner prognostic mixed layer base located at  $p_m$  is adjusted vertically by

$$\delta p_m = \frac{p_{k+1} - p_m}{p_{k+1} - p_k} \delta p_k + \frac{p_m - p_k}{p_{k+1} - p_k} \delta p_{k+1}. \quad (172)$$

The vertical motion at the MLB is assumed to be the linearly interpolated value between model interfaces  $k$  and  $k + 1$ . It is also necessary to add the vertical motion resulting from time smoothing of pressure interfaces, so the interface adjustments  $\delta p_k$  and  $\delta p_{k+1}$  in (172) represent the sum of the continuity and time smoothing adjustments. As a result of this vertical adjustment, a mixed layer base located at a model interface would always remain at the depth of this interface if no vertical mixing or diabatic heating/cooling occurs.

Additional vertical motion of the mixed layer base is possible, however, because the MLB can slope relative to the model vertical coordinates. The flow component normal to the MLB can therefore produce additional vertical motion. This part of the advection is not included, however, due to significant ambiguities in determining the flow field at the MLB in hybrid coordinates.

### 10.1.2 Simplified K-T model (hybrid coordinates without unmixing)

Due to the complexities of devising an unmixing scheme that reduces numerically induced property exchange between the mixed layer and ocean interior, a simplified alternative K-T model was developed by relaxing the requirement that the MLB be a prognostic variable. The tradeoff is between improved computational efficiency and an increase in numerical errors. Since the full K-T model 1 is far from perfect, this simplified model may be adequate for many purposes. In tests conducted in the Atlantic basin, use of this simplified model caused some problems at high latitudes, where unrealistic patterns of deep water formation occurred and unrealistic pathways were observed for the Gulf Stream and North Atlantic Current. In tropical and subtropical latitudes with relatively strong stratification, this simplified model clearly performed “as well” as the full model 1.

The K-T algorithm computes the change of mixed layer thickness over a small time interval  $\Delta t$ , and thus requires the old mixed layer information as the initial condition. This depth, which can be viewed as the cumulative result of past applications of the K-T algorithm at a given point, can either be carried as a prognostic variable (as in K-T model 1 above) or diagnosed *ad-hoc*. The present scheme uses option 2 to avoid the necessity of unmixing, and to avoid the ambiguities of constructing a representative mixed layer velocity field to advect the mixed layer base (which as a material variable needs to follow the flow).

Beginning at the top of the water column (layer 1), the algorithm searches for the first layer  $k$  whose density exceeds the average density  $\bar{\rho}$  of the overlying layers combined (layers 1 through  $k - 1$ ). This layer is assumed to contain the mixed layer base. Layer  $k$  is divided into sublayers with different densities. The density  $\rho_{up}$  of the upper sublayer is set equal to  $\bar{\rho}$  while the density  $\rho_{lo}$  of the lower sublayer is assigned a value within the range  $(\rho_k + \rho_{k+1})$ , for example  $\rho_{lo} = (\rho_k + \rho_{k+1}) / 2$ . Density conservation during sublayer formation yields the depth of the interface separating the sublayers, which is taken to be the mixed layer depth. This pressure interface is given by

$$p_m = p_k(1 - q) + p_{k+1}q \quad (173)$$

where  $p_k, p_{k+1}$  are the upper and lower interface pressures of layer  $k$ , and

$$q = \frac{\rho_{lo} - \rho_k}{\rho_{lo} - \bar{\rho}}. \quad (174)$$

Assignment of temperature/salinity values for the depth interval  $(0, p_{k+1})$  follows the above philosophy of assuming homogeneity between the surface and  $p_m$ . With the mixed layer depth already determined by (173), lower sublayer values of temperature and salinity follow from the requirement that their column integrals be invariant during the redistribution process. Specifically, we set  $T_{up} = \bar{T}$  and  $S_{up} = \bar{S}$ , where the overbar again indicates the average over layers  $k$  through  $k - 1$ . The lower sublayer values become

$$T_{lo} = \frac{T_k - \bar{T}q}{1 - q}, \quad S_{lo} = \frac{S_k - \bar{S}q}{1 - q}, \quad (175)$$

with  $q$  defined by (174).

Given the nonlinear nature of the equation of state, the upper and lower sublayer densities must be recomputed after temperature and salinity have been homogenized over layers 1 through  $k - 1$  and unmixed in layer  $k$ . After this, the density profile, characterized by homogeneous conditions between the surface and pressure  $p_m$  and a density discontinuity at that pressure, is provided to the K-T TKE algorithm to calculate the new mixed layer depth. Temperature and salinity are homogenized over the new mixed layer depth, and the surface fluxes are distributed over the same depth range. The resulting temperature and salinity profiles are then projected back onto the original hybrid coordinate profile. The sublayer information is not saved.

It is important to note that the sublayer formation and deletion cycle by itself does not cause a drift in the  $T/S$  profile provided that layers 1 through  $k - 1$  are fully homogenized to begin with. In other words, the original  $T/S$  profile is recovered if  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ . Initial experiments with this scheme indicate that best results are obtained by assigning  $\rho_{lo}$  a value closer to  $\rho_k$  than to  $\rho_{k+1}$ . To skip the necessity of forming sublayers, set  $\rho_{lo} = \rho_k$  (i.e.,  $q = 0$ ). The  $T/S$  profile transmitted to the K-T TKE algorithm in this case is obtained from the original profile by homogenizing temperature and salinity down to depth  $p_k$  and setting  $p_m = p_k$ .

## 10.2 Usage

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 10.2.1 Order of Operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 10.2.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 10.3 Variables

### 10.3.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

Notation in **mxkrta.f** or **mxkrtb.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 10.3.2 Local variables

*Subroutines **mxkrta** and **mxkrtb***

depnew

i, j                    Array indices.

k                      Layer index.

l                      Loop index.

m, n                  Time step indices.

tndcys

tndcyt

tosal

totem

*Subroutines **mxkrtaaj** and **mxkrtbaj***

alf1                    Stability parameter  $h/l$ .

alf2                    Stability parameter in the absence of rotation  $h/l_p$ .

ape	Term in the expression of entrainment.
bound1	
bound2	
cc4	Intermediate coefficient parameterizing turbulent effects.
cp1, cp3	Coefficients in the expression of the entrainment.
delp(kdm)	Cushion function argument.
dens(kdm)	
depnew	
dp1, dp2	
dpth	Transformation of the pressure difference in the mixed layer in thickness units ( <i>cm</i> ).
dsaln(idm)	Variation $\Delta S$ of salinity in the mixed layer.
dtemp(idm)	Variation $\Delta T$ of temperature in the mixed layer.
dtemp2	
dtrmax	
ea1, ea2	
ekminv	Inverse of the Ekman length.
em1, . . . , em5	Coefficients of the turbulent effects parameterization.
ex	Exponential of the Monin-Obukov stability parameter $h/L$ .
i, j	Array indices.
k, k0, k1	Layer indices.
kmxbot	
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.
obuinv	Inverse of the Monin-Obukov length.
pres(kdm+1)	Pressure profile.

q                   Relative variation of momentum in the mixed layer due to its deepening.

rho

s1, s2

sal

sdp(idm)

sflux1

smax

smin

spe                   Term in the expression of the entrainment.

ssal(kdm)            Old salinity profile.

sum1, sum2

swfold

swfrac

t1, t2

tdp(idm)

tem

thet

thknew

thknss                Layer thickness.

thkold

tmax, tmin

tndcys

tndcyt

tosal

totem

tr2

trmax, trmin  
 ttem(kdm)            Old temperature profile.  
 ustar3                ustar(i,j)\*\*3  
 value

*Subroutine mxkrtaaj and mxkrtbbj*

depnew  
 dp1, dp2  
 i, j, ja              Array indices.  
 k, k1, km            Layer indices.  
 l                      Loop index.  
 m, n                  Time step indices.  
 q  
 s1, s2, s3  
 slo  
 small  
 smax  
 smin  
 sup  
 uv1, uv2  
 uvmax  
 uvmin  
 zlo  
 zup

#### 10.4 Procedures

Subroutines        mxkrta, mxkrtaaj, mxkrtaaj, mxkrtb, mxkrtbaj, mxkrtbbj

## 11 Kraus-Turner Model - Diapycnal Mixing : diapf1.f or diapf2.f

### 11.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

When HYCOM is run using the Kraus-Turner Model, diapycnal mixing can be calculated using the KPP-style implicit diapycnal mixing algorithm outlined in Section 8.1.2 (subroutine `diapf1`). The second option is to calculate diapycnal mixing using a MICOM-style explicit diapycnal mixing algorithm for hybrid coordinates (subroutine `diapf2`) described in the following section.

### 11.2 Hybrid coordinate explicit algorithm

The explicit diapycnal-mixing algorithm used in MICOM is based on the model of McDougall and Dewar (1998). The central problem in implementing diapycnal mixing in an isopycnic coordinate model is to exchange potential temperature ( $\theta$ ), salinity ( $S$ ), and mass (layer thickness, expressed as  $\partial p/\partial\rho$ ) between model layers while preserving the isopycnic reference density in each layer, at the same time satisfying the following conservation laws:

$$\left(\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial t}\right)_\rho + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial p} = -\frac{\partial F_\theta}{\partial p} \quad (176)$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial t}\right)_\rho + \left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)\frac{\partial S}{\partial p} = -\frac{\partial F_S}{\partial p} \quad (177)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)_\rho + \frac{\partial}{\partial\rho}\left(\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right) = 0. \quad (178)$$

The expression  $(\partial\rho/\partial t)(\partial p/\partial\rho)$  is the generalized vertical velocity in isopycnic coordinates while  $F_\theta, F_S$  are the diapycnal heat and salt fluxes. Although this model was derived for isopycnic layer models, its use is valid for hybrid layer models with the actual layer densities, not their isopycnic reference densities, preserved during the mixing process.

Mutually consistent forms of the turbulent heat, salt, and mass fluxes are derived by integrating (176) through (178) across individual layers and layer interfaces. In a discrete layer model, whether or not it is isopycnic, layer variables such as  $\theta$ ,  $S$ , and momentum are assumed to be constant within layers and to have discontinuities at interfaces. Model layers will be denoted by index  $k$  increasing downward. Interfaces will also be denoted by index  $k$ , with interfaces  $k$  and  $k+1$  being located at the top and bottom of layer  $k$ , respectively.

Integration of (176) and (177) across the interior of layer  $k$  yields

$$\delta p^k \left(\frac{\partial\theta^k}{\partial t}\right) = F_\theta^{k,u} - F_\theta^{k,l} \quad (179)$$

$$\delta p^k \left( \frac{\partial S^k}{\partial t} \right) = F_S^{k,u} - F_S^{k,l}, \quad (180)$$

where  $\delta p^k = p^{k+1} - p^k$  is the thickness of layer  $k$  and the fluxes represent values infinitely close to the interfaces. The fluxes are assumed to have discontinuities at interfaces, but in contrast to the layer variables, they vary linearly with  $p$  in each coordinate layer consistent with the fact that  $\partial\theta/\partial t$  and  $\partial S/\partial t$  are  $p$ -independent. Equations (179) and (180) must satisfy the constraint that  $\rho$  remains constant while  $\theta$  and  $S$  change. The required condition is

$$\frac{1}{\rho} \frac{d\rho}{dt} = \beta \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} - \alpha \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = 0, \quad (181)$$

where

$$\alpha = -\frac{1}{\rho} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial \theta} \right)_{S,p} \quad \beta = \frac{1}{\rho} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial S} \right)_{\theta,p}$$

are the thermodynamic expansion coefficients for potential temperature and salinity, respectively. Combining (179) through (181), the constraint becomes

$$\beta^k (F_S^{k,l} - F_S^{k,u}) - \alpha^k (F_\theta^{k,l} - F_\theta^{k,u}) = 0. \quad (182)$$

Physical intuition suggests that the turbulent fluxes immediately above and below an interface, while usually different, should depend linearly on the magnitude of the discontinuity of the fluxed variable at the interface. It is also reasonable to postulate that the proportionality factor is independent of the fluxed variable. These assumptions are expressed analytically as

$$\frac{F_\theta^{k+1,u}}{\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k} = \frac{F_S^{k+1,u}}{S^{k+1} - S^k} = m^{k+1,u} \quad \frac{F_\theta^{k,l}}{\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k} = \frac{F_S^{k,l}}{S^{k+1} - S^k} = m^{k,l}. \quad (183)$$

Combining (182) and (183) yields

$$m^{k,u} [\beta^k (S^k - S^{k-1}) - \alpha^k (\theta^k - \theta^{k-1})] = m^{k,l} [\beta^k (S^{k+1} - S^k) - \alpha^k (\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k)].$$

To satisfy this relation in general,  $m^{k,u}$  and  $m^{k,l}$  must be of the form

$$m^{k,l} = \frac{c^k}{\beta^k (S^k - S^{k-1}) - \alpha^k (\theta^k - \theta^{k-1})} \quad m^{k,u} = \frac{c^k}{\beta^k (S^{k+1} - S^k) - \alpha^k (\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k)}.$$

Substitution of these expressions into (183) yields

$$F_\theta^{k,u} = c^k \frac{\theta^k - \theta^{k-1}}{\beta^k (S^k - S^{k-1}) - \alpha^k (\theta^k - \theta^{k-1})} \quad F_\theta^{k,l} = c^k \frac{\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k}{\beta^k (S^{k+1} - S^k) - \alpha^k (\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k)} \quad (184)$$

plus analogous expressions for  $F_S^{k,u}$  and  $F_S^{k,l}$  involving the same constant  $c^k$ .

To determine the proportionality factor  $c^k$  in (184), first note that the denominators in (184) represent a relative jump  $\partial\rho/\rho$ , the fluxes in (184) are finite-difference analogs of expressions of the general form  $F_Q = c\rho\partial Q/\partial\rho$  for variable  $Q$ . If the turbulent fluxes of  $Q$  are also represented in the context of  $K$  theory,  $F_Q = -K\partial Q/\partial p$ . Equating these two expressions for  $F_Q$  results in

$$c^k = -\frac{K}{\rho} \frac{\partial\rho}{\partial p} = -K \frac{N^2}{g}.$$

The fluxes then become

$$\begin{aligned} F_\theta^{k,u} &= -G^{k,u} (\theta^k - \theta^{k-1}) & F_\theta^{k,l} &= -G^{k,l} (\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k) \\ F_S^{k,u} &= -G^{k,u} (S^k - S^{k-1}) & F_S^{k,l} &= -G^{k,l} (S^{k+1} - S^k) \end{aligned} \quad (185)$$

where

$$G^{k,u} \equiv \frac{\left(K \frac{N^2}{g}\right)^k}{\beta^k (S^k - S^{k-1}) - \alpha^k (\theta^k - \theta^{k-1})} \quad G^{k,l} \equiv \frac{\left(K \frac{N^2}{g}\right)^k}{\beta^k (S^{k+1} - S^k) - \alpha^k (\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k)}. \quad (186)$$

Due to the physical uncertainties surrounding the magnitude of the exchange coefficient  $K$ , considerable freedom exists in evaluating the term  $\partial\rho/\partial z$  in  $N^2$ . One obvious choice was selected for use:

$$\frac{\Delta\rho}{\Delta p} = \frac{\rho^{k+1} - \rho^{k-1}}{2(p^{k+1} - p^k)}.$$

Having derived expressions for the vertical fluxes, the expressions used to advance layer thickness (mass flux),  $\theta$ , and  $S$  in time will now be derived. Considering the mass flux first, the expression  $(d\rho/dt)(\partial p/\partial\rho)$  is evaluated by converting (176) and (177) to flux form and integrating them across interfaces. This step is taken to remove the ambiguity that  $\partial\theta/\partial t$  and  $\partial S/\partial t$  are indeterminate at interfaces. The flux equations for heat and salt, obtained in the usual manner by combining the advective forms of the equations with (178), are

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \theta \frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} \left( \frac{d\rho}{dt} \frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho} \theta \right) = -\frac{\partial F_\theta}{\partial \rho} \quad (187)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( S \frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} \left( \frac{d\rho}{dt} \frac{\partial p}{\partial \rho} S \right) = -\frac{\partial F_S}{\partial \rho} \quad (188)$$

Integrating these equations over an infinitesimally thin slab straddling layer interface  $k+1$  at the base of layer  $k$  (which will be denoted by  $k+1/2$  to avoid confusion with the layer index), the time tendency terms drop out because of the smallness of  $\partial p/\partial\rho$ , producing

$$\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)^{k+1/2} = -\frac{F_\theta^{k+1,u} - F_\theta^{k,l}}{\theta^{k+1} - \theta^k} \quad (189)$$

and

$$\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)^{k+1/2} = -\frac{F_S^{k+1,u} - F_S^{k,l}}{S^{k+1} - S^k}. \quad (190)$$

By virtue of (185) and (186), the two previous expressions reduce to

$$\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)^{k+1/2} = G^{k,l} - G^{k+1,u}. \quad (191)$$

This expression gives the mass flux at interface  $k + 1/2$  which, in conjunction with the heat and salt fluxes given by (185), form a consistent set that can be used to solve the conservation equations for layer thickness, potential temperature, and salinity.

Inserting (191) into (178) and integration over layer  $k$  yields

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\delta p)^k + (G^{k,u} + G^{k,l}) - G^{k-1,l} - G^{k+1,u} = 0. \quad (192)$$

The  $G$  terms have been grouped in a manner that mimics the second derivative of  $G$  with respect to  $k$ , which illustrates that diapycnal mixing tends to transfer mass from thick layers ( $N^2$  small) to thin layers ( $N^2$  large). The prognostic equations for heat and salt are obtained from the flux form of the conservation equations (187) and (188), which are integrated over the interior portion of layer  $k$  to produce

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} [\theta^k (\partial p)^k] + (G^{k+1,u} + G^{k-1,l}) \theta^k - G^{k,u} \theta^{k-1} - G^{k,l} \theta^{k+1} = 0 \quad (193)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} [S^k (\partial p)^k] + (G^{k+1,u} + G^{k-1,l}) S^k - G^{k,u} S^{k-1} - G^{k,l} S^{k+1} = 0. \quad (194)$$

The  $G$  terms have again been arranged to highlight the diffusive nature of the equations. Equations (192) through (194) are integrated subject to the boundary conditions

$$\left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)^{k_{top}-1/2} = F_\theta^{k_{top},u} = F_S^{k_{top},u} = 0 \quad \left(\frac{d\rho}{dt}\frac{\partial p}{\partial\rho}\right)^{k_{bot}+1/2} = F_\theta^{k_{bot},l} = F_S^{k_{bot},l} = 0.$$

### 11.3 Usage

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

#### 11.3.1 Order of Operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 11.3.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 11.4 Variables

### 11.4.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

Notation in **diapf1.f** or **diapf2.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 11.4.2 Local variables

*Subroutines diapf1, diapf1aj, and diapf1bj*

i, j	Array indices.
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.

*Subroutine diapf1aij*

alfadt(kdm+1)	T contribution to density jump.
betads(kdm+1)	S contribution to density jump.
dbloc(kdm+1)	Buoyancy jump across interface.
diffdd	Double diffusion diffusivity scale.
diffs(kdm+1)	
diffft(kdm+1)	
dzb(kdm)	
fri	Function of rig.
froglp	
hm(kdm)	
hwide(kdm)	Layer thicknesses in (m).
i, j	Array indices.
k, ka	Layer indices.

m, n                    Time step indices.  
 kmask  
 mixflo  
 nlayer  
 prandtl                Prandtl number.  
 ratio  
 rhs(kdm)              Right-hand-side terms.  
 rigr                    Local Richardson number.  
 rrho                    Double diffusion parameter.  
 s1dn(kdm+1)  
 s1do(kdm+1)  
 shsq(kdm+1)          Velocity shear squared.  
 t1dn(kdm+1)  
 t1do(kdm+1)  
 tcc(kdm)              Central coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tcl(kdm)              Lower coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tcu(kdm)              Upper coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tr1dn(kdm+1)  
 tr1do(kdm+1)  
 tri(kdm,0:1)          Dt/dz/dz factors in tridiagonal matrix.  
 zm(kdm+1)

*Subroutine diapf1uij*

diffm(kdm+1)  
 dzb(kdm)  
 froglp



nlayer  
 presv  
 rhs(kdm)                   Right-hand-side terms.  
 tcc(kdm)                   Central coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tcl(kdm)                   Lower coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tcu(kdm)                   Upper coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
 tri(kdm,0:1)               Dt/dz/dz factors in tridiagonal matrix.  
 v1dn(kdm+1)  
 v1do(kdm+1)  
 zm(kdm+1)

*Subroutine diapf2*

j                            Array index.  
 m, n                         Time step indices.

*Subroutine diapf2j*

alfa  
 amount                    Limited flux.  
 beta  
 clips(idm)  
 clipt(idm)  
 delp                        Pressure variation at interfaces.  
 ennsq  
 flngth(idm,kdm)  
 flxl(idm,kdm)  
 flxu(idm,kdm)

froglp  
 i, j                    Array indices.  
 k, ka                  Layer indices.  
 m, n                  Time step indices.  
 kmax(idm)  
 kmin(idm)  
 pdot(idm,kdm)  
 q  
 qmax  
 qmin  
 sflxl(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 sflxu(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 small  
 sold(idm,2)            Old salinity.  
 tflxl(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 tflxu(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 tndcys  
 tndcyt  
 tosal(idm)  
 totem(idm)  
 trflxl(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 trflxu(idm,0:kdm+1)  
 trolld(idm,2)

### 11.5 Procedures

Subroutines        diapf1, diapf1aj, diapf1bj, diapf1aij, diapf1uij, diapf1vij,  
                       diapf2, diapf2j

## 12 MICOM Mode - K-T Model 3 : mxkrtm.f

When HYCOM is run with isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM mode), the model automatically uses K-T model 3, which is essentially the mixed layer model embedded in MICOM version 2.8.

### 12.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

Modelling the seasonal evolution of the thermal regime of the surface ocean implies including the effects of forcing by the atmosphere, whose fundamental properties are totally different from those of the ocean. The solar influence translates in part to a gain in radiative heat. Moreover, it has been known for a long time that the effect of the prevailing winds in the atmospheric boundary layer manifests itself through turbulent transport of momentum in the surface layers. To account explicitly for the processes connected to ocean-atmosphere exchanges in the context of an isopycnic theory, an integral-type model whose development was initiated by Kraus & Turner (1967) is used by HYCOM in MICOM mode . In such a model of the surface layer behavior, the problem of closing the turbulence equations is greatly simplified since the turbulent fluxes at the boundaries of the mixed layer simply need to be determined. The progressive shrinking of the thickness  $h$  of the surface layer by diapycnic mixing is counterbalanced by a mechanism increasing the thickness. For this, an entrainment velocity  $w_e$  is introduced at the base of the layer such that :

$$w_e = \frac{dh}{dt} \quad \text{if} \quad \frac{dh}{dt} > 0$$

$$w_e = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \frac{dh}{dt} \leq 0$$
(195)

The originality of this type of model is to express the vertical turbulent fluxes at the base of the mixed layer by an equation of the general form :

$$-\left(\overline{a'w'}\right)_{-h} = w_e \Delta a$$
(196)

where  $\Delta a$  depicts the discontinuity of the variable at the base of the layer. In this model, the effect of the wind is represented by the surface stress  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_s(\tau_{sx}, \tau_{sy})$ .

#### 12.1.1 Internal energy and turbulent kinetic energy

The evolution equation of the internal energy of a homogeneous layer of temperature  $\theta_s$  is then given by :

$$h \frac{\partial \theta_s}{\partial t} = \left(\overline{\theta'w'}\right)_{-h} - \left(\overline{\theta'w'}\right)_0 + \frac{1}{\rho C_p} (R_0 - R_h) - \left[ K_H \left( \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial z} \right) \right]_{-h}$$
(197)

with :  $-\left(\overline{\theta'w'}\right)_0 = \frac{P}{\rho C_p}$  and  $-\left(\overline{\theta'w'}\right)_{-h} = w_e \Delta\theta$ .  $R_z$  is the solar radiation at the depth  $z$  and  $P$  the surface heat losses (infrared radiation, latent and sensible heat flux).  $\Delta\theta$  represents the temperature discontinuity at the base of the mixed layer. The flux  $\left[K_H \left(\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial z}\right)\right]_0$  is accounted for at the surface. If the latter is null, it is situated in the upper limit of the homogeneous layer.

The knowledge of the entrainment velocity necessitates a supplementary equation. In a homogeneous layer model, this calculation is carried out using the integrated equation of turbulent kinetic energy  $E/2$  :

$$\underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \int_{-h}^0 \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} dz}_1 = \underbrace{\left[ \left( \frac{E}{2} + \frac{\pi'}{\rho_0} w' \right) \right]_{-h}}_2 - \underbrace{\left[ \left( \frac{E}{2} + \frac{\pi'}{\rho_0} w' \right) \right]_0}_3 - \underbrace{\int_{-h}^0 \overline{\mathbf{u}'w'} \cdot (\partial\mathbf{u}/\partial z) dz}_4 + \underbrace{\int_{-h}^0 \overline{b'w'} dz}_5 - \underbrace{h\epsilon_m}_6 \quad (198)$$

with :

- $\mathbf{u}(u, v)$  : horizontal velocity ;
- $b = g(\rho_0 - \rho)/\rho_0$  : buoyancy ;
- $\pi$  : pressure ;
- $\epsilon_m$  : TKE average heat dissipated in the mixed layer.

In the complete form, this equation expresses therefore the equilibrium between :

1. the TKE tendency contained in the mixed layer ;
2. the TKE flux at the base of the mixed layer ;
3. the TKE surface flux ;
4. a production term from cutting the current ;
5. a consumption term corresponding to the buoyancy of the homogeneous layer ;
6. a heat dissipation term.

Niller & Kraus (1977) have shown that the TKE flux at the base of the mixed layer is generally negligible. On the other hand, the TKE content of this layer is more often considered constant. Further, following Kraus & Turner (1967), the surface TKE flux originating principally from the turbulent agitation at the surface (waves, swells, ...) is parametrized as :

$$\left[ \left( \frac{E}{2} + \frac{\pi'}{\rho_0} w' \right) \right]_0 = m_2 u_*^3 \quad (199)$$

where  $u_*$  is the surface drag velocity such that :

$$u_*^2 \mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_s / \rho \quad (200)$$

As for the production term, simply write :

$$\int_{-h}^0 \overline{\mathbf{u}'w'} \cdot (\partial \mathbf{u} / \partial z) dz = m_3 u_*^3 \quad (201)$$

In referring to a reference state with temperature  $T_0$ , salinity  $S_0$ , and in hydrostatic equilibrium, let :

$$\rho = \rho_0 [1 - \alpha_T (T - T_0) + \beta_S (S - S_0)] \quad (202)$$

with the expansion coefficients  $\alpha_T$  and  $\beta_S$  defined such that :

$$\alpha_T = -\frac{1}{\rho} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial T} \right)_S \quad \text{et} \quad \beta_S = \frac{1}{\rho} \left( \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial S} \right)_T \quad (203)$$

$$\int_{-h}^0 \overline{b'w'} dz = -\frac{1}{2} h (w_e \Delta b + B(h)) \quad (204)$$

$B(h)$  then represents the sum of surface flux  $-(\overline{b'w'})_0$  and of the increase of buoyancy due to the absorption of solar radiation :

$$B(h) = -(\overline{b'w'})_0 + \frac{\alpha_T g}{\rho C_p} \left( R_0 + R_h - \frac{2}{h} \int_{-h}^0 R(z) dz \right) \quad (205)$$

The TKE conservation equation in the mixed layer can then finally be written as :

$$(m_2 + m_3) u_*^3 - \frac{h}{2} (B(h) - w_e \Delta b) - h \epsilon_m = 0 \quad (206)$$

### 12.1.2 Parametrization of turbulent dissipation

To treat this 'handicap' and to address a generalization of the parametrization of the turbulent dissipation  $\epsilon$ , Gaspar (1988) reintroduced the vertical dissipation scale of Kolmogorov  $l_\epsilon$  such that :

$$\epsilon = E^{3/2} / l_\epsilon \quad (207)$$

Let, then, over the mixed layer :

$$\epsilon_m = u_e^3 / l \quad (208)$$

$u_e$  is a characteristic velocity scale of the turbulence in the mixed layer and  $l$  a dissipation length which can be expressed formally as a function of diverse parameters :

$$l = F(h, L, \lambda, L_\Delta, L_N) \quad (209)$$

with :

$L = u_*^3 / B(h)$  : Monin-Obukov length

$\lambda = u_* / f$  : Ekman length

$L_\Delta = (\Delta u^2 + \Delta v^2) / \Delta b$  : relative scale at the entrainment zone

$L_N = (E^{1/2} / N)_{-h}$  : scale of stratification at the base of the mixed layer

$N$  : Brunt-Vaisälä frequency

### 12.1.3 A recent prediction model of the mixed layer

Since the dynamic instability present at the base of the mixed layer is typically of a time scale on the order of the inertial period, Gaspar (1988) notes that this phenomenon can be neglected in the seasonal studies. In a parallel way, the influence of the TKE dissipation produced by this term will therefore be omitted :  $L_\Delta$  does not enter in the determination (209) of  $l$ . On the other hand, to introduce  $L_N$  will not have an important effect if  $\Delta T$  is very weak. This is rarely the case in the ocean. Finally, (208) can be expressed as :

$$h\epsilon_m = u_e^3 G(h/L, h/\lambda) \quad (210)$$

$G$  is a function of the stability parameter of Monin-Obukov  $h/L$  and of the rotation parameter  $h/\lambda$ . Realizing that setting  $u_e = u_*$  causes underestimation of the turbulent velocity scale which causes convective deepening, Gaspar (1988) writes first of all :

$$u_e^2 = E_m = \frac{1}{h} \int_0^h E dz \quad (211)$$

From the earlier studies of the subject, it appears that the stability parameter can be expressed by the relation :

$$G(h/L, h/\lambda) = \frac{h}{l} = a_1 + a_2 \max[1, h/(0.4\lambda)] \exp(h/L) \quad (212)$$

Finally, the prediction of  $h$  is carried out using the expression (206), in which the turbulent dissipation comes from the forms (210), (211) and (212) :

$$(m_2 + m_3)u_*^3 - \frac{h}{2} (B(h) - w_e \Delta b) - (h/l)E_m^{3/2} = 0 \quad (213)$$

Moreover, the turbulent vertical characteristic velocity scale is introduced such that :

$$u_w^2 = \frac{1}{h} \int_0^h \overline{w'^2} dz = W_m \quad (214)$$

Then, the TKE equation at the base of the mixed layer is written :

$$-\left(\overline{b'w'}\right)_{-h} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[ \left( \frac{E}{2} + \frac{p'}{\rho_0} w' \right) \right]_{-h} - \left[ \overline{\mathbf{u}'w'} \cdot (\partial \mathbf{u} / \partial z) \right]_{-h} - \epsilon_{-h} \quad (215)$$

In consideration of the relative values of each term of this relation, Gaspar puts it in the general entrainment form :

$$h\Delta b w_e = m_1 u_e^2 u_w \quad (216)$$

Finally, let :

$$h\Delta b w_e = m_1 E_m W_m^{1/2} \quad (217)$$

The equation giving  $W_m$  is obtained by integrating the tendency equation of  $\overline{w'^2}$  over the homogeneous layer. Gaspar obtains the form :

$$\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{m_5}{3}\right) [h\Delta bw_e + hB(h)] = \frac{h}{3} \left(\frac{m_4}{l_p} - \frac{1}{l}\right) E_m^{3/2} + \frac{m_3 m_5}{3} u_*^3 - \frac{m_4 h}{l_p} E_m^{1/2} W_m \quad (218)$$

$l_p$  is a characteristic length in the absence of rotation :

$$\frac{h}{l_p} = a_1 + a_2 \exp(h/L) \quad (219)$$

The equations (213), (217) and (218) constitute the total system of the Oceanic Mixed Layer model described in the article of Gaspar (1988). The entrainment velocity is calculated numerically from the formula :

$$h\Delta bw_e = \frac{[(0.5A_p - C_{p1}S_p)^2 + 2C_4(h/l)^2 A_p S_p]^{1/2} - (0.5A_p + C_{p1}S_p)}{C_4(h/l)^2 - C_{p1}} \quad (220)$$

With :

$$A_p = C_{p3}u_*^3 - C_{p1}hB(h) \quad (221)$$

$$S_p = (m_2 + m_3)u_*^3 - \frac{1}{2}hB(h) \quad (222)$$

$$C_{p1} = [2(1 - m_5)(l_p/l) + m_4]/6 \quad (223)$$

$$C_{p3} = [m_4(m_2 + m_3) - (l_p/l)(m_2 + m_3 - m_5 m_3)]/3 \quad (224)$$

$$C_4 = 2m_4 m_1^{-2} \quad (225)$$

#### 12.1.4 Entrainment condition

From equation (213), it is clear that entrainment does not manifest itself if the condition  $S_p > 0$  is true. In the oceanic mixed layer, the TKE resulting from the production mechanisms less the energy consumed to homogenize the heat gain due to thermal input (all solar radiation + surface losses) should be positive.

On the other hand, the relation (217) implies :

$$W_m > 0 \quad (226)$$

In eliminating  $h\Delta bw_e$  of (213) and (218), the following equation is obtained :

$$W_m = \frac{2C_{p1}}{m_4} E_m - \frac{C_2 l_p}{m_4 h} u_*^3 E_m^{-1/2} \quad (227)$$

where  $W_m$  is expressed as a function of  $E_m$  and  $C_2$  is a positive constant :

$$C_2 = [(3 - 2m_5)(m_2 + m_3) - m_5 m_3]/3 \quad (228)$$

$W_m$  is cancelled by :

$$E_{m0} = u_*^2 \left( \frac{C_2 l_p}{2C_{p1} h} \right)^{2/3} \quad (229)$$

The entrainment condition (226) is therefore equivalent to :

$$E_m > E_{m0} \quad (230)$$

Entrainment does not appear if the TKE exceeds a minimum given by the form (229). After having eliminated  $h\Delta bw_e$  of (213) and (217),  $E_m$  is given by the zero of the function :

$$F(E_m) = \frac{1}{2}m_1 E_m W_m^{1/2} + \frac{h}{l} E_m^{3/2} - S_p \quad (231)$$

in which  $W_m$  depends on  $E_m$  by the intermediary of the relation (227). For  $E_m > E_{m0}$ ,  $F$  is a strictly increasing function of  $E_m$ . The entrainment can not appear if :

$$F(E_{m0}) < 0 \quad (232)$$

Entrainment can not exist therefore if the TKE balance  $S_p$  is greater than the minimal dissipation (*i.e.* the dissipation associated with  $E_{m0}$ , the minimum value of  $E_m$ ).

Writing

$$A_p = S_p - \frac{h}{l} E_{m0}^{3/2}, \quad (233)$$

the necessary and sufficient condition for entrainment at the base of the mixed layer ( $w_e > 0$ ) is :

$$A_p > 0. \quad (234)$$

In the case where this condition is not satisfied, the hypothesis is that  $h$  automatically adjusts itself to maintain  $A_p = 0$ . When the heat balance  $B(h)$  is not zero, this is equivalent to :

$$h = \frac{C_p^3}{C_{p1}} L \quad (235)$$

Following the theory of Niiler & Kraus (1977), the equilibrium of the mixed layer is attained by :

$$h = \frac{2mu_*^3}{(-B_0)} \quad (236)$$

$B_0$  is the surface buoyancy flux. The authors assume that it varies linearly inside the mixed layer and is zero at the base. The Monin-Obukov length is then expressed as  $L = u_*^3 / \kappa B_0$ .  $\kappa$  is the Von Karman constant ( $\kappa \simeq 0.4$ ). To remain in accord with this definition, set  $m = 1.25$ .

### 12.1.5 Constants and numerical parameters

Referring to diverse earlier studies, Gaspar retains the following values by the different parameters introduced above :  $m_1 = 0.45$  ;  $m_2 = 2.6$  ;  $m_3 = 1.9$  ;  $m_4 = 2.3$  ;  $m_5 = 0.6$  ;  $a_1 = 0.6$  ;  $a_2 = 0.3$

## 12.2 Numerical techniques

### 12.2.1 Entrainment algorithm

During a time interval  $\Delta t$ , after having detected a deepening (entrainment) ( $w_e > 0$ ), the growth of the thickness of the mixed layer can be written :

$$\Delta h = \frac{E\Delta t}{b_{mix} - b_{sub}} \quad (237)$$

With :

- $E\Delta t$  : TKE variation in the mixed layer
- $b_{mix}$  : buoyancy of the mixed layer of thickness  $h$
- $b_{sub}$  : buoyancy of the adjacent isopycnic layer

The form (237) can not be incorporated directly in a numerical calculation (the denominator can be zero). Moreover, this expression assumes that under the mixed layer exists a layer of buoyancy  $b_{sub}$  of finite thickness. As there is no *a priori* reason for these two assumptions to be true, Bleck *et al.* (1989) have developed a particular method for solving (237).

In HYCOM, calculating  $E\Delta t$  is optional. Option (1) uses the formulation of the TKE evolution equation following the method of Kraus & Turner (1967) ( $m \neq 0$  ;  $n = 0.15$  ;  $s = 0$ ). Option (2) employs the relation (220).

Let  $b_1$  and  $z_1$  be the buoyancy and depth of the mixed layer at a point  $P$  of the domain. The variables  $z_k$  are introduced to represent the lower positions with respect to the sub-adjacent isopycnic layers of buoyancy  $b_k$ . The potential energy (PE) of the column of water is expressed as :

$$PE = \int_{z_0}^{z_N} bz \, dz = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^N b_k (z_k^2 - z_{k-1}^2) \quad (238)$$

with  $z_0 = 0$ . The same column of water, but mixed has the PE :

$$PE_{mix} = b_{mix} \frac{z_N^2}{2} \quad (239)$$

with :

$$b_{mix} = \frac{1}{z_N} \sum_{k=1}^N b_k (z_k - z_{k-1}) \quad (240)$$

Also let :

$$PE_{mix} = \frac{z_N}{2} \sum_{k=1}^N b_k (z_k - z_{k-1}) \quad (241)$$

In remarking that the kinetic energy used to mix the heat acquired by radiation in the surface layer is the same as the difference (241)-(238) over the depth  $h$  :

$$h = \frac{2E\Delta t + G(l-1) - b_l z_{l-1}^2}{F(l-1) - b_l z_{l-1}} \quad (242)$$

with :  $F(l) = \sum_{k=1}^l b_k (z_k - z_{k-1})$  and  $G(l) = \sum_{k=1}^l b_k (z_k^2 - z_{k-1}^2)$ . Note that the calculation of  $h$  by such a formulation implies knowledge of the number  $l$  of the concerned layers.

### 12.2.2 Detrainment algorithm

Consider the situation after a time interval  $\Delta t$  in the case where the term  $E\Delta t$  becomes negative. The index  $( )_1$  always serves to identify the mixed layer. Suppose the buoyancy  $b_1$  lies between the two discrete values  $b_k$  and  $b_{k-1}$  of the chosen initial distribution. In this case, the Monin-Obukov length satisfies the condition  $L < z_1$ .

In principle, the buoyancy transfer can be described by the conservation equation :

$$(b'_1 - b_1)L = (b_1 - b_k)(z_1 - L). \quad (243)$$

But then, the following two conditions must be satisfied :

condition A :  $b'_1 < b_{max}$  where  $b_{max}$  is the buoyancy which a fictitious mixed layer of thickness  $L$  would acquire during a time interval  $\Delta t$  under the influence of  $B_0$ . It is a threshold procedure. Its usage permits avoiding surface reheating of the ocean caused by errors in the ocean-atmosphere flux which serve to force the model.  $b_{max}$  is given by the expression :

$$b_{max} = b_1 - B_0\Delta t \left( \frac{1}{L} - \frac{1}{z_1} \right) \quad (244)$$

If the value of  $b'_1$  evaluated by (243) exceeds  $b_{max}$ , this threshold is translated into the new mixed layer thickness :

$$z'_1 = z_1 \frac{b_1 - b_k}{b_{max} - b_k}. \quad (245)$$

condition B :  $b'_1 < b_{k-1}$ . If this condition B is true, it will be necessary to partition the buoyancy transfer over the layers  $k$  and  $k-1$ . This provision handles well the non-isopycnic behavior of the mixed layer between discrete values  $b_k$  and  $b_{k-1}$ . For  $b'_1 > b_{k-1}$ , it is possible to distribute a part of the buoyancy over a layer of density  $\rho_{k-1}$  and of thickness  $z'_1 - L$  such that :

$$z'_{k-1} = z_1 \frac{b_1 - b_k}{b_{k-1} - b_k} - L \frac{b_{max} - b_{k-1}}{b_{k-1} - b_k} \quad (246)$$

If condition B is not satisfied, the mixed-layer detrainment mechanism therefore leads to inflation of two sub-surface layers. The process is decomposed in three steps (figure 12) :

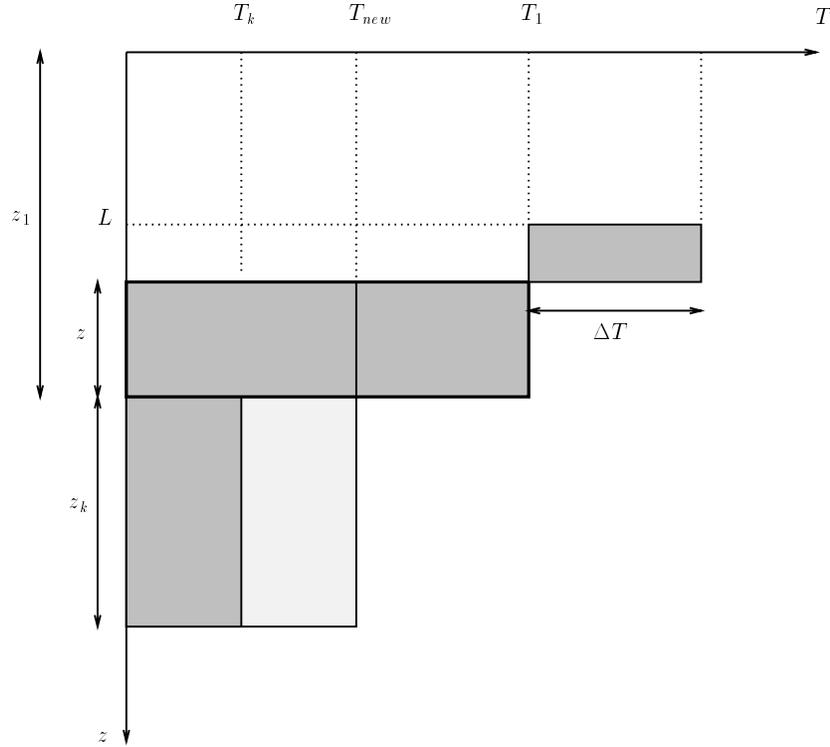


Figure 12: Conservation of heat during detrainment of the mixed layer.

1. Formation of the new mixed layer of thickness equal to the Monin-Obukov length and of buoyancy  $b_{max}$  ;
2. Inflation of an intermediate layer ( $k - 1$ ) ;
3. Adjustment of the old sub-adjacent layer ( $k$ ) to the mixed layer.

In fact, the application of relation (246) (*i.e.* creating an intermediate layer of density  $\sigma_{k-1}$ ) is not possible if the buoyancy is not a function of only one variable. Taking into account the joint effects of salinity and temperature introduces a degree of supplementary freedom. In this case, it is necessary to extract from the layer  $k$  a quantity of heat equal to the sum of the heat required to match the buoyancy value of the part above the slice of water entrained and of the heat corresponding to the increment  $(b'_1 - b_1)$  of the mixed layer. In this framework, Bleck *et al.* (1992) have developed a particular method to schematize these transfers. Assume a surface layer of temperature  $T_1$ , of salinity  $S_1$  and of thickness  $z_1$ . Let  $T_k, S_k, z_k$  be the corresponding characteristics for the layer  $k$ . If  $(z_1 - L) > 0$ , the procedure transfers the excess of the heat contained in a layer of thickness  $(z_1 - L)$  to the layer  $k$ . Since the model is using isopycnic coordinates, this transfer will be paired with a heat transfer of this ascending layer to the mixed layer. Let  $\Delta T$  be the maximum

allowed growth of the temperature of the mixed layer allowed during a time step. Note by  $z$  the thickness of the fraction of the intermediate layer of vertical extension ( $z_1 - L$ ) which allows an augmentation of temperature  $\Delta T$ . Since the mixed layer has a buoyancy greater than that of layer  $k$ , the problem becomes one of determining  $z$ . The heat transfer to layer  $k$  leads to a temperature  $T_{new}$  such that (figure 12) :

$$T_1 z + T_k z_k - \Delta T(z_1 - z) + T_{new}(z + z_k) \quad (247)$$

Let :

$$T_{new} = \frac{(T_1 + \Delta T)z - \Delta T z_1 + T_k z_k}{z + z_k} \quad (248)$$

and the salinity :

$$S_{new} = \frac{S_1 z + S_k z_k}{z + z_k} \quad (249)$$

These two characteristics must satisfy  $\sigma(T_{new}, S_{new}) = \sigma_k$ . In assuming an equation of state of third degree :

$$\sigma(T, S) = c_1 + c_2 T + c_3 S + c_4 T^2 + c_5 T S + c_6 T^3 + c_7 T^2 S \quad (250)$$

and in expressing  $T_{new}$  and  $S_{new}$  through the forms  $(az + b)/(cz + d)$  and  $(ez + f)/(cz + d)$ , the conservation of  $\sigma_k$  requires solving the polynomial equation :

$$a_3 z^3 + a_2 z^2 + a_1 z + a_0 = 0 \quad (251)$$

The expressions for coefficients  $a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3$  are given in appendix E of Bleck *et al.* (1992). Moreover, the introduction of a supplementary layer  $\sigma_{k-1}$  implies also the restoration of motion parameters. Now, the MICOM theory assumes that the exchanges of momentum occur immediately after the mass transfers between the mixed layer and sub-adjacent layers (Bleck *et al.*, 1989). For a given layer, the momentum remains constant during the process of rearranging the sub-surface layers concerned in the evolution algorithm of the mixed layer.

### 12.3 Usage

In the MICOM mode, the numerical calculation of the evolution of the surface mixed layer is carried out by the subroutine :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### 12.3.1 Order of operations

Recall that, while deepening the mixed layer is relatively easy to model, to reproduce its recession is more complex. Assume a surface layer of characteristics  $T_1, S_1, z_1$ . In the original detrainment algorithm developed by Bleck *et al.* (1989) for one variable of state, later adapted by Bleck *et al.* (1992) for the two variables  $T$  and  $S$ , the heat acquired by the ocean surface during a time step is not distributed over a slice of water of thickness equal to the Monin-Obukov length  $L$ . In fact, the thickness  $h$  given by the relation (235) proposed by Gaspar (1988) is introduced. So, the old mixed layer is divided into a new surface layer of characteristics  $T'_1, S_1, h$  and a fossil layer of thickness  $(z_1 - h)$ . This last layer is also partitioned into two sub-layers :

1. a slice of water of density equal to that of the sub-adjacent layer  $\sigma_k$  and of salinity  $S_1$  ;
2. an intermediate layer of temperature  $T'_1$  and of salinity  $S_1$ .

The option of parametrization of dissipation actually used in version 2.0 of MICOM is the formulation of Gaspar (1988). The lines of code of option 1 based on the method of Kraus & Turner (1967) are still available but commented out.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Once  $A_p$  has been calculated with relation (221), the following test is carried out :

if  $A_p > 0$ , the TKE variation ( $E\Delta t$ ) of the mixed layer during a time step is positive. To maintain the equilibrium formulated by the equation (213), this growth represents the TKE that will be consumed by entrainment into the mixed layer. It is calculated from the form (??). A first inference of the new thickness  $z'_1$  of the mixed layer is given by  $z_1$ ;

if  $A_p < 0$ , the TKE variation is negative. The TKE contained in the mixed layer will therefore diminish by a quantity  $E\Delta t = A_p$ . A first inference of the new thickness  $z'_1$  of the mixed layer is given by the relation (235) under the condition that it be less than  $z_1$ .

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Then, calculate the form (242) iterating over  $k$  as long as the value of  $h$  obtained remains greater than that of the upper interface of the  $k^{\text{th}}$  layer situated at the position  $z_{k-1}$ . When this condition is no longer true, the order  $l$  is obtained of the relation (242) and as a consequence, a second inference of  $z'_1$ .

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Before validating this first result, the numerical value which will be retained is required to be located between the bottom and a minimum thickness value of the mixed layer.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

After this, the sign of the variation  $\Delta z = z'_1 - z_1$  is used as a test :

if  $\Delta z > 0$ , the result  $h_s = z'_1$  is confirmed and the new values of temperature, salinity, and density of the mixed layer are calculated ;

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

if  $\Delta z < 0$ , proceed in two steps :

1. from the general equation of internal energy (197), determine the growth of temperature  $\Delta T$  undergone by a fictitious layer of thickness  $z'_1$  given by the relation (235) from the theory of Gaspar (1988).
2. for the mixed layer to maintain this thickness  $z'_1$ , the salt content (see figure 14) is conserved. Then, apply the relation of state giving the temperature  $T_{new}$  as a function of  $\sigma_k$  (which is conserved) and of salinity  $S_{new}$  which is wanted to calculate. The growth  $\Delta z$  of the thickness of the sub-adjacent layer involves a heat transfer in the fictitious surface layer which should be positive. (see figure 15).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

At this stage, it is therefore possible to compare this heat gain taken to  $z'_1$  (which translates to an increase of the surface temperature  $dT$ ) with the temperature growth  $\Delta T$  found before :

- a) if  $dT \leq \Delta T$ , in this configuration, 100% detrainment is possible. The new values  $T_{new}$  and  $S_{new}$  are attributed to layer  $k$  then, concerning the mixed layer, put  $T'_1 = T_1 + dT$  and  $z'_1 = z_1 + \Delta z$ . In operating this way the non-representative surface heating is guarded against because, unless  $dT = \Delta T$  is obtained exactly, the depth of

the mixed layer which was fixed is greater than what it should be. In all cases, it should be greater than the threshold value which was fixed by the run. The surface density becomes  $\sigma'_1 = \sigma(T'_1, S_1)$

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

b) if  $dT > \Delta T$ , the heat is distributed over a surface layer of temperature  $T''_1 = T_1 + dT$  and of thickness  $z''_1$  such that  $z''_1 > z'_1$  (see figure 16). The sub-adjacent layer  $k$  is also going to thicken and the new characteristics  $T_{new}$  and  $S_{new}$  of this layer should also satisfy :

$$\sigma(T_{new}, S_{new}) = \sigma_k \quad (252)$$

In keeping with the preceding case, partial detrainment is now possible. The density of the mixed layer now becomes  $\sigma''_1 = \sigma(T''_1, S_1)$ . The new characteristics of layer  $k$  have particular forms given by appendix E of Bleck *et al.* (1992), the conservation of  $\sigma_k$  comes from the solution of a polynomial of the form (251).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The specific volume of the surface layer is given by the equation of state.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The following operation consists of accounting for the thickness variation of the surface layer.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The last step of the calculation consists of the redistribution of momentum over the water column, accounting for the possibility of momentum mixing by diffusion.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

12.3.2 Flowchart

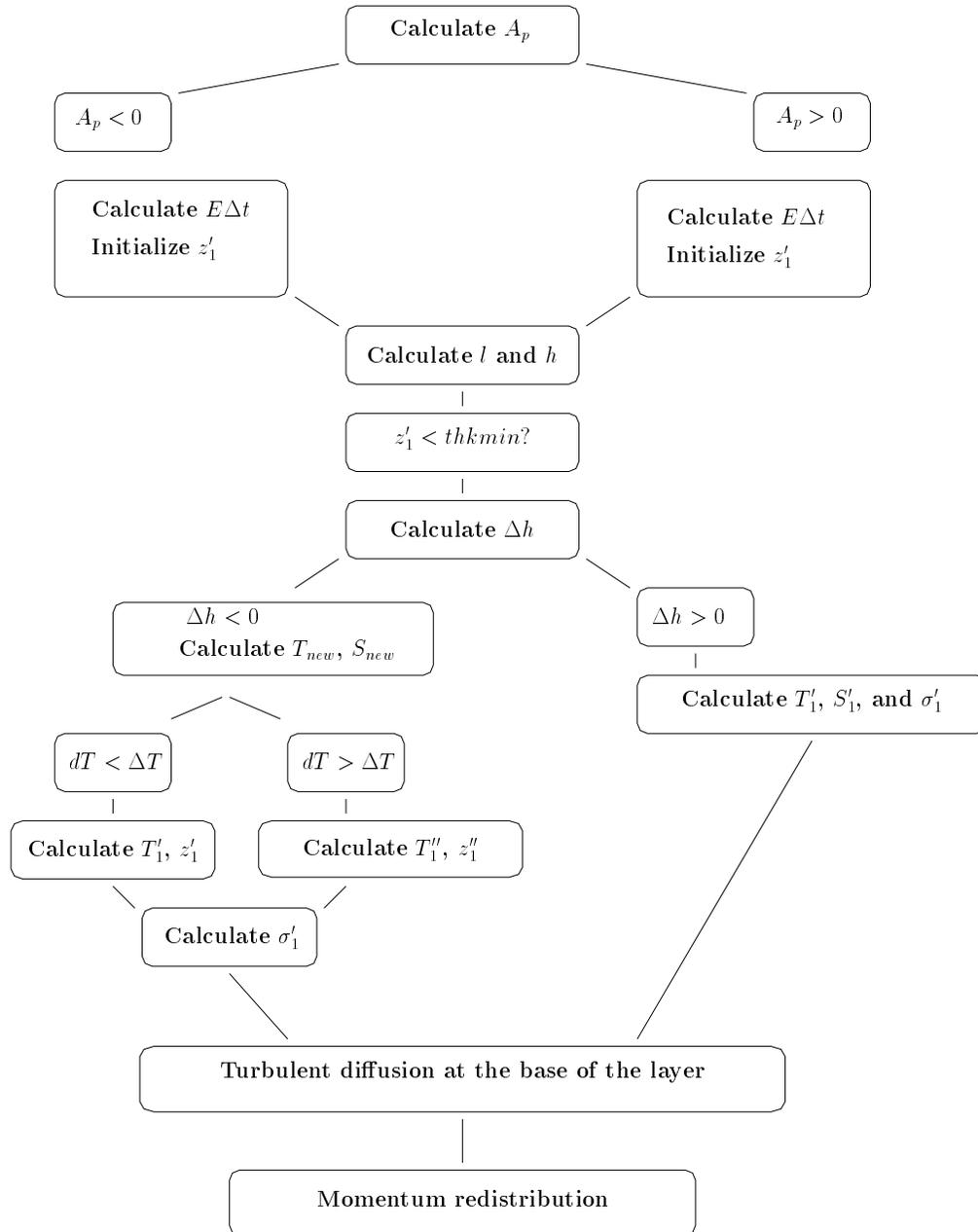


Figure 13: Flowchart of the calculation of the mixed layer evolution in MICOM mode

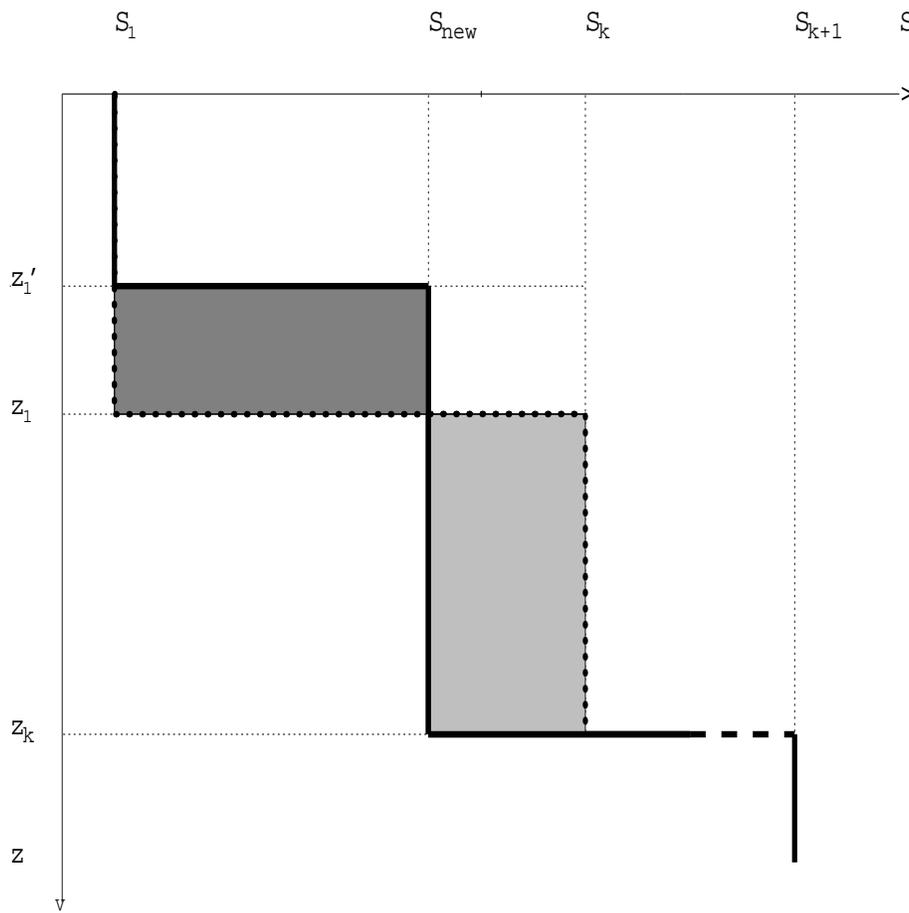


Figure 14: Conservation of salt in updating the mixed layer.

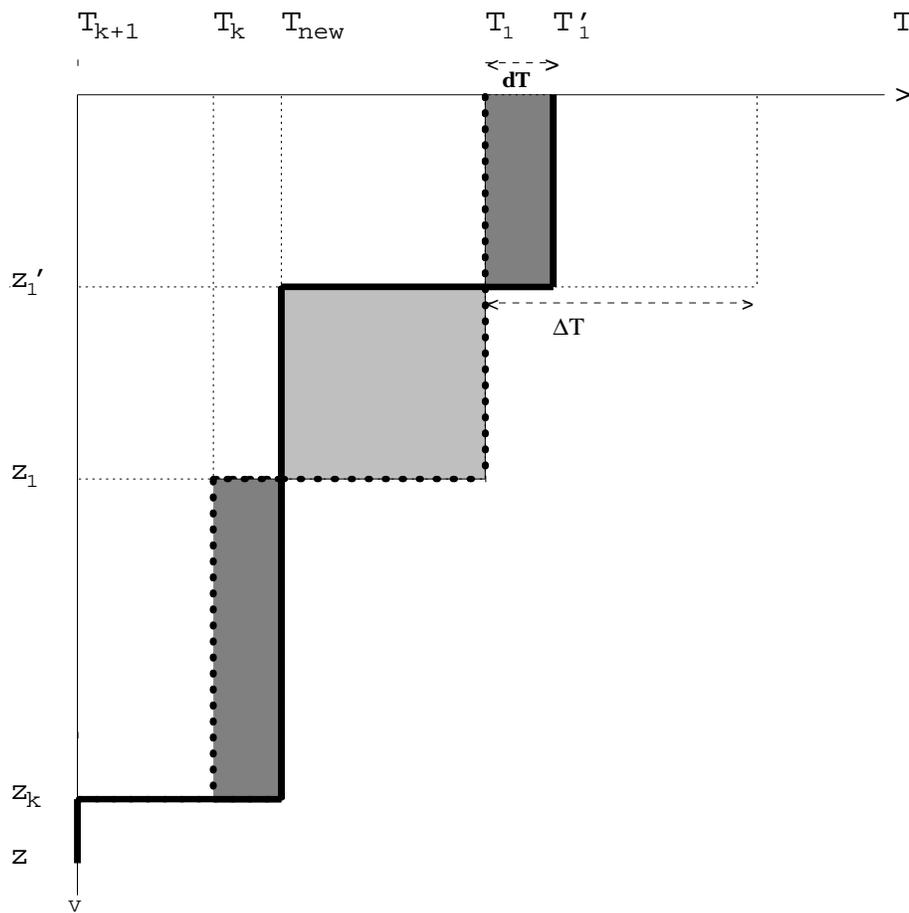


Figure 15: *Illustration of the mechanism of updating the mixed layer in the case when 100% detrainment is possible.*

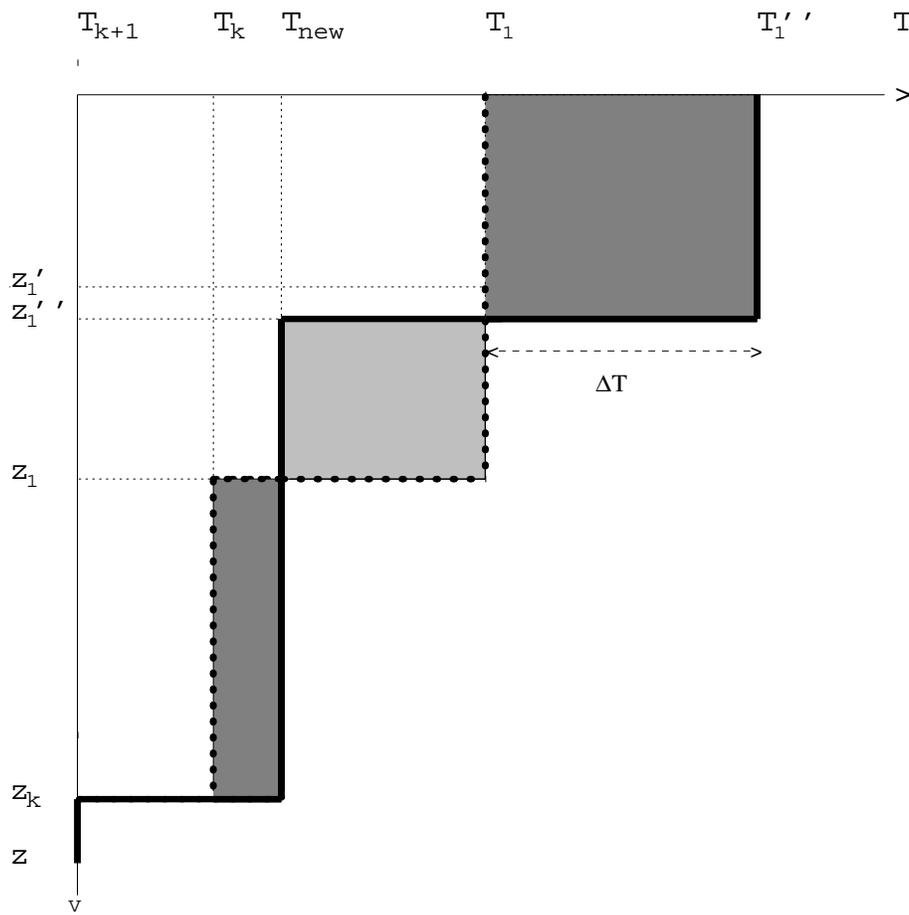


Figure 16: *Illustration of the mechanism of updating the mixed layer in the case when partial detrainment is possible.*

## 12.4 Variables

### 12.4.1 Identification

<u>Notation in the theory of Gaspar (1988)</u>	<u>Notation in <b>mxkrtm.f</b></u>
$h/l$	alf1
$h/l_p$	alf2
$A_p, S_p$	ape, ???
$B$	buoyfl(i, j)
$C_4$	cc4
$C_{p1}, C_{p3}$	cp1, cp3
$h$	dpth
$a_1, a_2$	ea1, ea2
$1/\lambda$	ekminv
$m_1, \dots, m_5$	em1, \dots, em5
$\exp(h/L)$	ex
$1/L$	obuinv
$E\Delta t$	turgen(i, j)
$u_*$	ustar(i, j)
<u>Notation in the theory of Bleck <i>et al.</i> (1992)</u>	<u>Notation in <b>mxkrtm.f</b></u>
$a, b, c, d, e, f$	a, b, ?, d, e, f
$a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3$	cc0, cc1, cc2, cc3
$c_1, c_2, c_3, c_4, c_5, c_6, c_7$	c1, c2, c3, c4, c5, c7
$d(c_1 - \sigma_k)$	c1msig

**12.4.2 Local variables***Subroutine mxkrtm*

delp	Pressure variation at interfaces.
i, j	Array indices.
k	Layer index.
kmax	
l	Loop index.
m, n	Time step indices.
q	Relative variation of momentum in the mixed layer due to its deepening.
sdot	
thk	Augmentation of mixed layer thickness by turbulent diffusion.
tndcys	
tndcyt	
tosal	
totem	
work(3)	

*Subroutine mxkrtmaj*

alf1	Stability parameter $h/l$ .
alf2	Stability parameter in the absence of rotation $h/l_p$ .
ape	Term in the expression of entrainment.
cc4	Intermediate coefficient parameterizing turbulent effects.
cp1, cp3	Coefficients in the expression of the entrainment.
c1msig	Coefficient in the calculation of zeroes of the polynomial giving the new characteristics of the layer sub-adjacent to the mixed layer.

<code>dpth</code>	Transformation of the pressure difference in the mixed layer in thickness units ( <i>cm</i> ).
<code>ea1, ea2</code>	
<code>ekminv</code>	Inverse of the Ekman length.
<code>em1, . . . , em5</code>	Coefficients of the turbulent effects parameterization.
<code>ex</code>	Exponential of the Monin-Obukov stability parameter $h/L$ .
<code>i, j</code>	Array indices.
<code>k</code>	Layer index.
<code>l</code>	Loop index.
<code>m, n</code>	Time step indices.
<code>obuinv</code>	Inverse of the Monin-Obukov length.
<code>pnew</code>	Mixed layer thickness ( <i>cm</i> ).
<code>sdot</code>	
<code>spe</code>	Term in the expression of the entrainment.
<code>thknss</code>	Layer thickness.
<code>ustar3</code>	<code>ustar(i, j)**3</code>

*Subroutine mxkrtmbj*

<code>a, b, d, e, f</code>	Coefficients in the expressions of new characteristics $T$ and $S$ of layer $k$ .
<code>c1msig</code>	Coefficient in the calculation of zeroes of the polynomial giving the new characteristics of the layer sub-adjacent to the mixed layer.
<code>cc0, . . . , cc4</code>	Intermediate coefficients parameterizing turbulent effects.
<code>ccubim</code>	
<code>ccubq</code>	
<code>ccubqr</code>	
<code>ccubr</code>	

ccubr1  
ccubs1  
ccubs2  
dpr  
dsaln                   Variation  $\Delta S$  of salinity in the mixed layer.  
dtemp                   Variation  $\Delta T$  of temperature in the mixed layer.  
i, j                    Array indices.  
k                        Layer index.  
l                        Loop index.  
m, n                    Time step indices.  
num                     Number of real roots.  
pnew                    Mixed layer thickness (*cm*).  
root  
root1  
root2  
root3  
s1  
sdot  
sdp(idm)  
smx1  
sn  
snew                    Salinity of the mixed layer.  
s-up  
t1  
tdp(idm)  
thknss

tmx1

tn

tnew                    Temperature of the mixed layer.

z                        Real root of the polynomial.

## 12.5 Procedures

Functions            ccubq, ccubr, ccubqr, ccubs1, ccubs2, ccubr1, ccubim, root, root1, root2, root3

*Subroutines*        mxkrtm, mxkrtmaj, mxkrtmbj

## 13 Convection - Kraus-Turner or MICOM Mode : convch.f or convcm.f

When HYCOM is run using the Kraus Turner model or in MICOM-compatibility mode, convection is performed by the model. The variations of mixed layer characteristics result from two principal steps :

1. Explicitly taking into account ocean-atmosphere exchanges (*c.f.* § 12) ;
2. Modeling advection with the velocity field (*c.f.* § 12). Consequently, an inversion at the base of the mixed layer is not excluded. Phase 1 is optional. When radiative exchanges and heat turbulence are not considered, the mechanical effect due to the wind can always be treated through the surface Reynolds tension (*c.f.* § 4). The advection step is systematically used. It can, by itself, generate a surface inversion.

### 13.1 Usage

Within subroutine `convcm`, for each point, this possible inversion is diagnosed, its vertical extension is determined, and it is addressed by conserving the content of heat and salt in the layers concerned.

#### 13.1.1 Order of operations

The first step consists of traversing the vertical and testing the value of the density deviation  $\rho_k - \rho_1$ . When it is negative, the situation is unstable and is addressed by mixing layer  $k$  with the layer above it, conserving heat and salt. Then infer the density  $\rho'_1$  which serves as a new reference to test for a possible inversion with layer  $k + 1$ .

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The second step consists of conserving the momentum by integrating it over the new surface layer.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The final operation consists of storing this new vertical distribution.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

#### 13.1.2 Flowchart

\* INSERT FLOWCHART HERE \*

## 13.2 Variables

### 13.2.1 Identification

Notation in the theory

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

Notation in **convcm.f**

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 13.2.2 Local variables

*Subroutine convch*

coluin(idm)

i, j                    Array indices.

iter                    Iteration loop index.

itmax

k, kp, ks                Layer indices.

l                        Loop indices.

m, n                    Time step indices.

q

sal

siglo

sigup

tem

thet

tre

ulo

uup

vlo

vup

*Subroutine convcm*

delp                    Pressure variation at interfaces.  
dthet  
i, j                    Array indices.  
k                      Layer index.  
l                      Loop index.  
m, n                  Time step indices.

### 13.3 Procedures

Subroutines        convch, convcm

## 14 MICOM Mode - Diapycnal mixing : diapf3.f

### 14.1 Formalism and numerical techniques

#### 14.1.1 Turbulent diffusion

Using  $\theta$  to represent the vertical distribution of density in the ocean, the standard concept of turbulent diffusion is used to express the turbulent fluxes associated with this variable of state :

$$\overline{w'\theta'} = K_H \partial\theta/\partial z \quad (253)$$

where  $K_H$  is the diffusivity.  $w'$  and  $\theta'$  represent the turbulent fluctuations in the vertical component of velocity and in density in the Reynolds sense. Without a source term, diffusion, or horizontal advection, the evolution equation of the variable  $\theta$  at depth  $z$  is then written as :

$$\left(\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial t}\right)_z = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( K_H \frac{\partial\theta}{\partial z} \right) \quad (254)$$

The local tendency of the variable  $\theta$  then results simply from the divergence of vertical turbulent flux associated with this parameter.

Set  $F = K_H \partial\theta/\partial z$ . Under the assumption that the turbulent flux is zero at the surface ( $F_s = 0$ ) and at the bottom ( $F_b = 0$ ), integrating equation (254) over the vertical conserves the quantity  $\theta$  in a column of water.

In the hypothetical case where the flux at the boundary is zero, since a source term such as solar radiation is not taken into account, the vertical component of the turbulent flux  $F$  can result only from the initial profile of the parameter  $\theta$ . Over the profile at time  $t$ , this flux will cause a vertical displacement of the isocline  $\theta$ , situated at the level  $z$  which is described by the equation :

$$\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial t}\right)_\theta = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial\theta} \quad (255)$$

The variable  $\theta$  is assumed to be stepwise constant in the vertical :

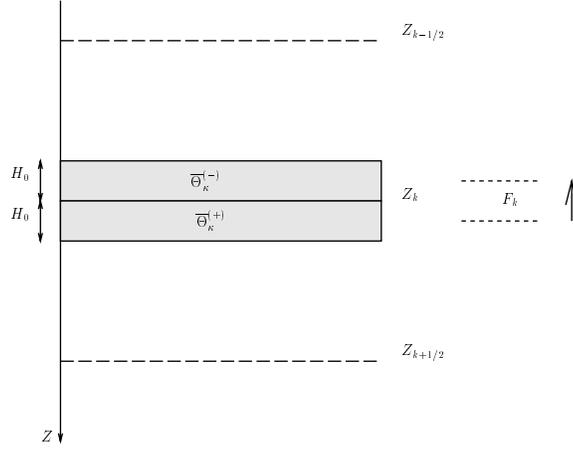
$$\theta(z) = \theta_k \quad \text{for } z_{k-1/2} \leq z \leq z_{k+1/2}$$

The indices  $k - 1/2$  and  $k + 1/2$  are the positions of the interfaces above and below the layer  $k$ .

In a layer configuration, the user wants to express the form (255) in centered finite differences considering that the vertical distribution of turbulent flux can also be represented by a succession of layers of flux  $F_k$  centered at  $z_k$ . The user then has :

$$\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial\theta}\right)_{k+1/2} = -\frac{(F_{k+1} - F_k)}{\theta_{k+1} - \theta_k} \quad (256)$$

The layer scheme therefore imposes the knowledge of the divergence of flux at successive interfaces. To calculate a vertical distribution of fluxes centered at  $z_k$  an artificial gradient

Figure 17: *Illustration of the calculation of turbulent flux  $F_k$ .*

on the interior of each layer  $k$  is created.

The diapycnic mixing algorithm implemented in MICOM mode is a simplified version of the algorithm developed by Hu (1991).

#### 14.1.2 Turbulent heat flux

To illustrate the mechanism of diapycnic mixing, imagine that the turbulent instability due to the temperature discontinuity at the interface between two layers manifests itself in the appearance of a thin intermediate mixed layer. At the upper limit of the layer  $k$ , at the coordinate  $z_{k-1/2}$ , the temperature of this micro-layer is posited to be the same as  $\theta'_{sup}$  such that :

$$\theta'_{sup} = \frac{1}{2} (\theta_k + \theta_{k-1}) \quad (257)$$

Then, the continuous function is introduced by breaking up :

$$\theta'(z) = \frac{1}{z_{k+1/2} - z_{k-1/2}} \left[ \frac{\theta_k + \theta_{k-1}}{2} (z_{k+1/2} - z) + \frac{\theta_k + \theta_{k+1}}{2} (z - z_{k-1/2}) \right] \quad (258)$$

for :  $z_{k-1/2} \leq z \leq z_{k+1/2}$ . The distribution  $\theta'(z)$  linearly varies the influence of the boundary conditions of the diapycnic mixing on the interior of layer  $k$  in such a manner that the influence of the upper boundary condition is zero at the lower interface and *vice versa*. The surface mixed layer is represented at the surface by introducing the upper discontinuity :  $\theta'(z) = \theta_1$  for  $z \leq z_{3/2}$ .

The new distribution  $\theta'(z)$  is integrated over two intervals of finite thickness  $H_0$ , situated respectively above and below the middle point of layer  $k$  of depth  $z_k = 1/2 (z_{k-1/2} + z_{k+1/2})$ .

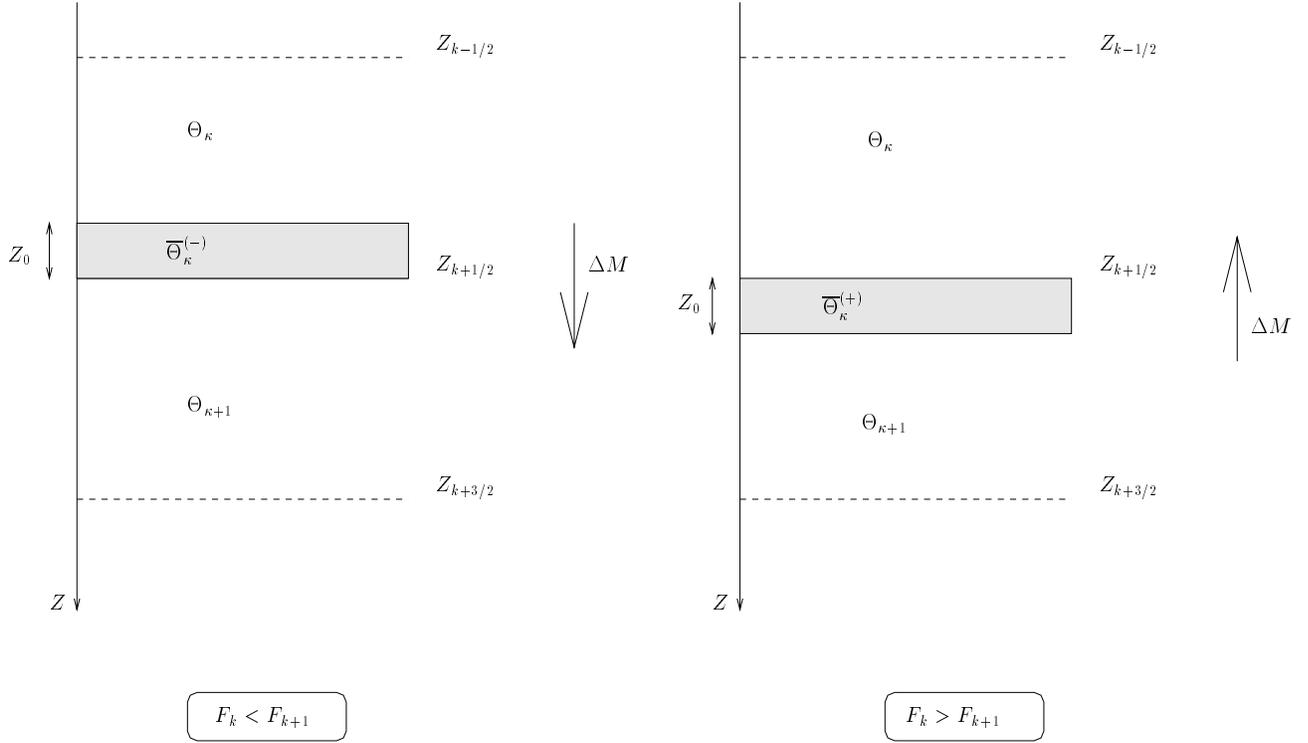


Figure 18: *Illustration of the calculation of the divergence of the turbulent flux  $F_k$ .*

The two new variables are obtained (figure 17):

$$\bar{\theta}_k^{(-)} = \frac{1}{H_0} \int_{z_k - H_0}^{z_k} \theta' dz \quad (259)$$

$$\bar{\theta}_k^{(+)} = \frac{1}{H_0} \int_{z_k}^{z_k + H_0} \theta' dz \quad (260)$$

The flux in  $k$  is then defined as

$$F_k = K_H \frac{\bar{\theta}_k^{(+)} - \bar{\theta}_k^{(-)}}{H_0} \quad (261)$$

Note that for layers of thickness greater than  $2H_0$ , the following relation is given :

$$F_k = K_H \frac{\theta_{k+1} - \theta_{k-1}}{2(z_{k+1/2} - z_{k-1/2})}$$

### 14.1.3 Numerical implementation

During a time interval  $\Delta t$ , after having been identified with the relation (255), the form (256) expresses that a column of water with a thickness of  $\Delta z = (\partial z / \partial t) \Delta t$  is going to

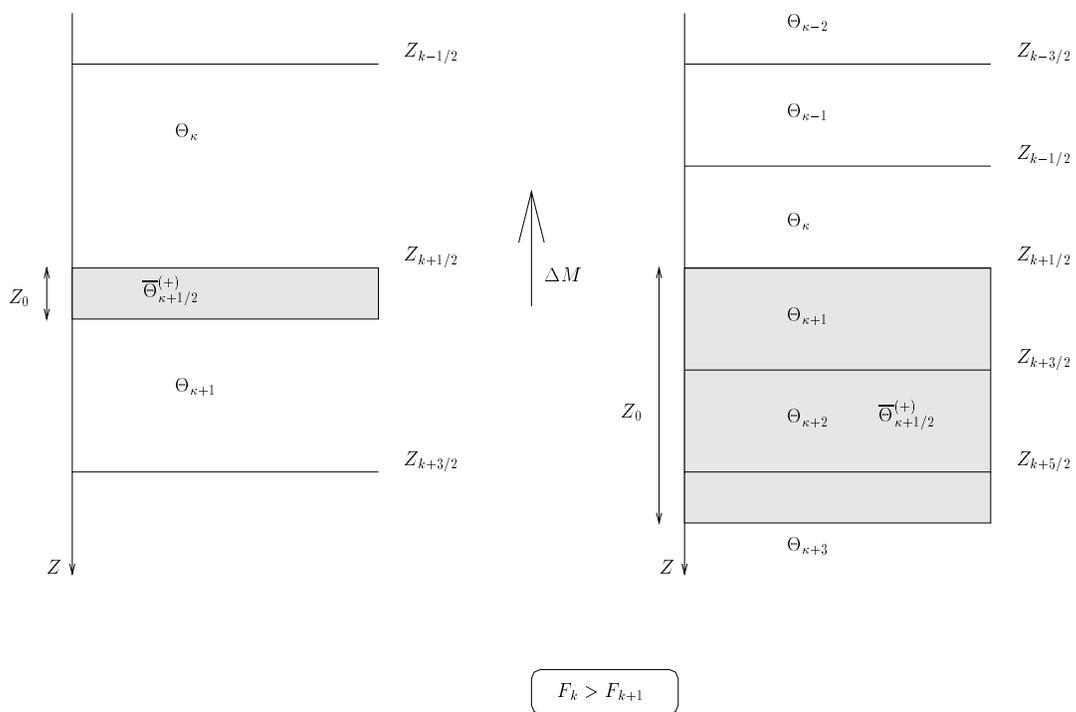


Figure 19: *Illustration of the generalization of Hu (1991) in the case of an ascending mass transfer.*

see its density change from  $\theta_{k+1}$  to  $\theta_k$  (or *vice-versa* depending on the sign of  $\partial F/\partial\theta$ ). In other words, in the deep regime, during  $\Delta t$ , the diapycnic mixing causes a vertical transfer of the quantity  $\Delta z$  of the layer  $k$  to the layer  $k+1$ . Numerically, this transfer can pose problems if  $\Delta z$  exceeds the thickness of layer  $k$ . This fact most concerns layers of small thickness. It can also appear during a transfer of water from the mixed layer to the first layer below where the increment  $(\theta_k - \theta_{k+1})$  is often small.

Consider the case  $F_k > F_{k+1}$ . The user will want to do a mass transfer from layer  $k+1$  to layer  $k$ . To generalize the expression (256) Hu (1991) substitutes  $\theta_{k+1}$  with the average expression (figure 18) :

$$\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)} = Z_0^{-1} \int_{z_{k+1/2}}^{z_{k+1/2}+Z_0} \theta dz \quad (262)$$

where the discrete distribution  $\theta(z)$  reappears.

In this case, the general form (256) becomes :

$$\left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \theta} \right)_{k+1/2} = - \frac{(F_{k+1} - F_k)}{\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)} - \theta_k} \quad (263)$$

In identifying this last expression with the relation (255), it is clear that the displacement  $\Delta z$  of the interface  $k+1/2$  represents the thickness of a layer whose density evolves from  $\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)}$  to  $\theta_k$ . Only two alternatives are possible (figure 19) :

1. if layer  $k+1$  is thicker than  $Z_0$ , then  $\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)} = \theta_{k+1}$ . Equation (263) takes the form of (256). More frequently, to carry out a transfer into the layer  $k$ , it is possible to extract the ascending mass only from layer  $k+1$ ;
2. if layer  $k+1$  is thinner than  $Z_0$ , the approach of Hu says that the layers  $k+1$ ,  $k+2, \dots$  contribute to the total displacement  $\Delta z$  in the same proportions in which they contribute to the integral (262).

Concerning the case where  $F_k < F_{k+1}$ , the form (256) is then substituted with :

$$\left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial \theta} \right)_{k+1/2} = - \frac{(F_{k+1} - F_k)}{\theta_{k+1} - \bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(-)}} \quad (264)$$

where,

$$\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(-)} = Z_0^{-1} \int_{z_{k+1/2}-Z_0}^{z_{k+1/2}} \theta dz. \quad (265)$$

The mass of the column of water of thickness  $\Delta z$  and of density  $\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(-)}$  transferred from layer  $k$  into layer  $k+1$  comes from layers  $k$ ,  $k-1$ ,  $k-2$ , etc. in the same proportions in which they contribute to the integral (265).

## 14.2 Usage

The numerical calculation of diapycnic mixing is carried out by the subprogram :

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

### 14.2.1 Order of operations

For each point of the calculation, the index of the first isopycnic layer of which the specific volume is strictly larger than that of the mixed layer is determined. The result is stored in the array `klist(i, j)`. Then, the user must evaluate an adequate integration thickness  $H_0$ . The result is stored in the array `dpmx(i, j)`. In the first step, the operation consists of finding two limiting values : `h0lo` in the surface and `h0hi` from a fixed pressure `delp`. These values are bounded by 1/4 of the total water height. Between these two depths, the final value varies linearly.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Then, explore the part above in the column of water to find layers which will comprise the interval  $Z_0$  and calculate  $\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(-)}$  over this slice of water. Next, explore the part below in the column of water to find the layers which will comprise the interval  $Z_0$  and calculate  $\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)}$  over this slice of water. The results are stored in the arrays `thup(i, k)` and `thdn(i, k)`. The thickness  $Z_0$  is also put to the initial value  $H_0$ . Similarly if it is small (10 meters for ocean applications), it is possible that the instantaneous thickness of a layer be even smaller, or zero. The algorithm accounts for this.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The next operation consists of determining the two temperatures  $\bar{\theta}_k^{(-)}$  and  $\bar{\theta}_k^{(+)}$  defined by the expressions (259) and (260). For this, the whole column of water is inspected to calculate a bulk characteristic temperature of each of two slices of water situated respectively above and below an interior point in layer  $k$ . The thickness `dpmx(i, j)` of each of the two intermediate layers is limited by half of the vertical extension of the layer studied. It is also necessary to account for the fact that a layer can have zero size.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

The corresponding flux is calculated by using the relation (261).

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

In the last step, the generalization of Hu (1991) is used first :

a) if  $F_{k-1} - F_k < 0$ , then substitute  $\theta_{k-1}$  by  $\bar{\theta}_{k-1/2}^{(-)}$  ;

b) if  $F_{k-1} - F_k \geq 0$ , then substitute  $\theta_k$  by  $\bar{\theta}_{k-1/2}^{(+)}$

then, calculate the corresponding vertical increment  $\Delta z$ . The result is stored in the array `sdot(i,j)`. The maximal positive excursion of the lower interface is bounded by the ocean depth. A negative displacement of the upper interface is limited by 90% of the initial immersion of this interface.

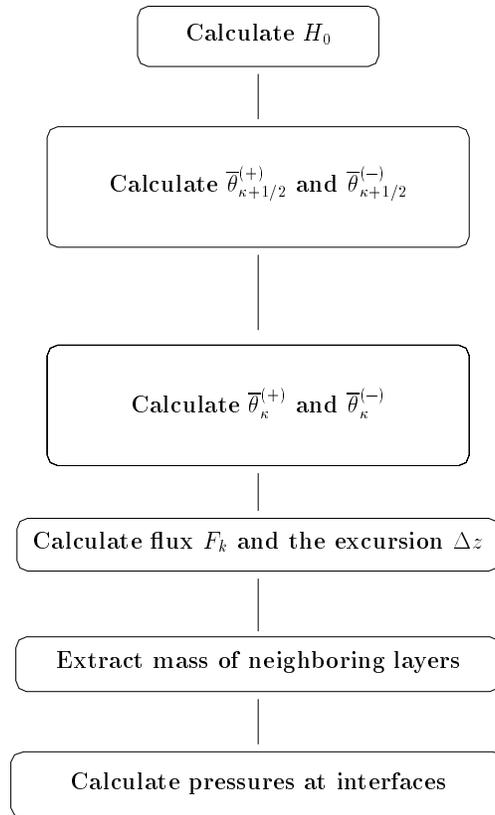
[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

Finally, extract the mass of the layers above or below so as to determine the new thickness of each layer concerned.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

To end, the user must calculate the interface pressures.

[\*\*\*\*\* ADD SOURCE CODE HERE \*\*\*\*\*]

**14.2.2 Flowchart**Figure 20: *Order of the mixed layer calculations in HYCOM 2.0.01*

### 14.3 Variables

#### 14.3.1 Identification

<u>Notation in the theory of Hu (1991)</u>	<u>Notation in <b>diapf.f</b></u>
$H_0$	????
$Z_0$	delp
$\bar{\theta}_k^{(-)}$	????(i,1)
$\bar{\theta}_k^{(+)}$	????(i,1)
$\bar{\theta}_{k-1/2}^{(-)}$	????(i,k)
$\bar{\theta}_{k+1/2}^{(+)}$	????(i,k)

#### 14.3.2 Local variables

##### *Subroutine diapf3*

j                    Array index.  
m, n                Time step indices.

##### *Subroutine diapf3j*

alfa  
beta  
ennsq  
flngth(idm,kdm)  
flxl(idm,kdm)  
flxu(idm,kdm)  
froglp  
i, j                Array indices.  
k                    Layer index.  
l                    Loop index.  
m, n                Time step indices.

kmax(idm)  
kmin(idm)  
pdot(idm,kdm)  
q  
salt  
small  
smax  
smin  
sold(idm,2)            Old salinity.  
trflx(idm,kdm+1)  
trmax  
trmin  
troid(idm,2)

#### 14.4 Procedures

Subroutines        diapf3, diapf3j

### 15 Calculational grid

Both HYCOM and MICOM use the “C” grid, but use different horizontal meshes. In the MICOM mesh, the positive x direction was southward and the positive y direction was eastward. The HYCOM mesh was converted to standard Cartesian coordinates, with the x axis pointing eastward and the y axis pointing northward. The HYCOM mesh is illustrated below for pressure (P), velocity component (U and V), and vorticity (Q) grid points. This case is for 7 x 7 pressure grid points. The grid meshes for the other variables have 8 x 8 grid points. All fields in this case would be dimensioned 8 x 8, with the eighth row and column unused for variables on pressure grid points.

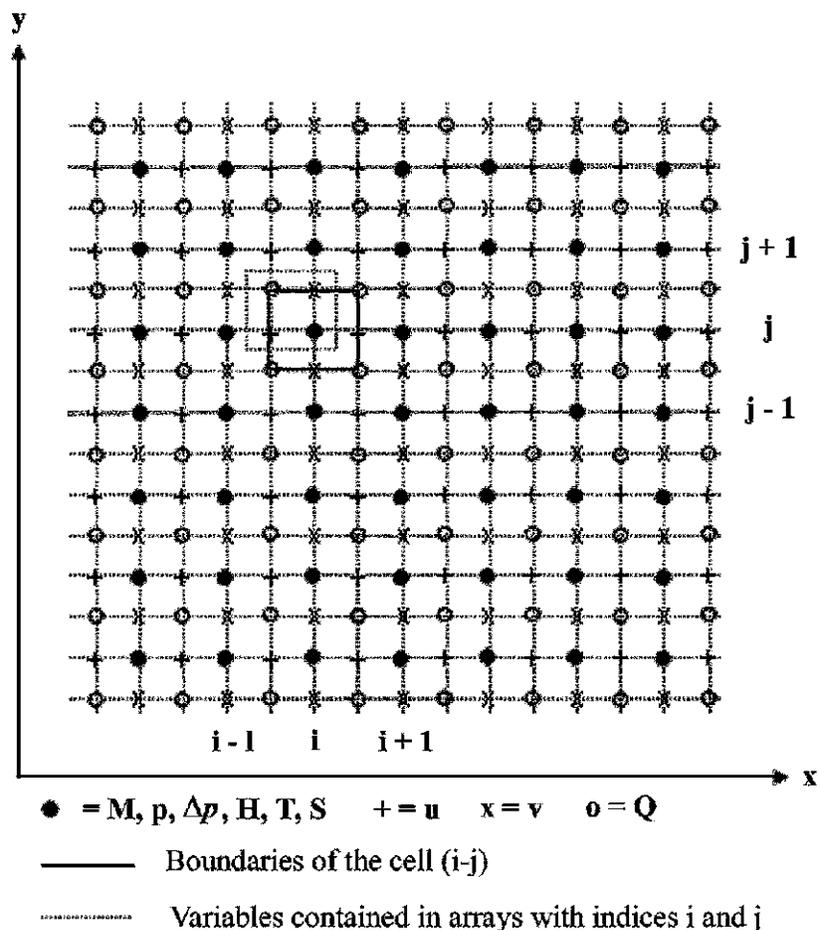


Figure 21: *Distribution of variables on an Arakawa C grid*

## 16 Boundary conditions in HYCOM

HYCOM 2.0.01 is equipped with two types of boundary conditions: Newtonian relaxation in sponge layers, and full open-ocean boundary conditions.

### 16.1 Relaxation Boundary Conditions

HYCOM contains a simple Newtonian relaxation scheme that can be used for sponge boundary zones, or more generally for relaxation to climatology within any model subdomain specified by the user. Within relaxation boundary zones, temperature, salinity, and vertical coordinate pressure levels are updated as follows for each time step:

$$\begin{aligned} T_{t+1}^k &= T_t^k + \Delta t \mu \left( \widehat{T}_t^k - T_t^k \right) \\ S_{t+1}^k &= S_t^k + \Delta t \mu \left( \widehat{S}_t^k - S_t^k \right) \\ p_{t+1}^k &= p_t^k + \Delta t \mu \left( \widehat{p}_t^k - p_t^k \right), \end{aligned} \tag{266}$$

where the hat denotes Levitus climatology,  $k$  is the layer or interface number, and  $\mu^{-1}$  is the relaxation time scale. The user specifies the values of  $\mu^{-1}$  at each grid point, setting it to nonzero values where relaxation is to be performed. This results in a two-dimensional mask that defines the relaxation zones. Software is provided with HYCOM that first horizontally interpolates Levitus climatology to model grid points at the original  $z$  levels, then transforms these vertical profiles to isopycnic coordinates at each model grid point. Thus, the profiles of  $\widehat{T}$ ,  $\widehat{S}$ , and  $\widehat{p}$  used in (266) are isopycnic beneath the surface mixed layer.

When HYCOM is run with isopycnic vertical coordinates (MICOM mode), temperature and salinity are both relaxed in the non-isopycnic mixed layer (layer 1) while salinity only is relaxed in deeper layers with temperature diagnosed from the equation of state to preserve the isopycnic reference density. When HYCOM is run with hybrid vertical coordinates, both temperature and salinity are relaxed in the upper  $n_{hyb}$  layers, where  $n_{hyb}$  is the user-specified number of hybrid layers, and salinity alone is relaxed in deeper layers with temperature diagnosed from the equation of state. When HYCOM is run with hybrid coordinates, all pressure interfaces are relaxed to climatology. When the model is run with isopycnic coordinates, all interfaces except 2 are relaxed to avoid adjusting the mixed layer base. Of course, all interfaces greater than 2 are prevented from becoming shallower than interface 2.

### 16.2 Open Boundary Conditions

Due to the fundamental ill posedness of the open boundary value problem in hydrostatic models (*e.g.* Olinger and Sundstrom, 1978), limited-area modeling with the primitive equations is more an art than a science. Open boundary conditions that have worked reasonably well in MICOM, and that have been adapted for HYCOM, are discussed here.

The main features of the open boundary scheme are as follows:

1. No distinction is made between inflow and outflow boundaries.
2. Boundary conditions for the barotropic and baroclinic mode are formulated separately.
3. The well-posed boundary conditions developed by Browning and Kreiss (1982, 1986), which work well in single-layer, shallow-water models, are applied to the barotropic mode, specifically the pressure field and normal velocity component.
4. Barotropic tangential velocity components are prescribed.
5. Baroclinic velocities normal to the boundary, as well as total (barotropic plus baroclinic) mass fluxes, are prescribed.
6. Baroclinic tangential velocity components are nudged toward prescribed values.
7. Other boundary conditions for the baroclinic mode are applied not only at points directly on the boundary, but in a finite-width “sponge” zone. They include interface pressure nudging, damping of the tendency term in the continuity equation, and enhanced viscosity in the momentum equations.

### 16.2.1 No distinction between inflow and outflow boundaries

The first approach listed above is taken in recognition of the fact that, regardless of the direction of the physical flow, information generally passes through the boundary in both directions. Making a distinction between inflow and outflow boundaries is therefore justified only with regard to advection of material properties, such as temperature, salinity, and potential vorticity.

### 16.2.2 Well-posed boundary conditions

Browning and Kreiss (1982, 1986) suggest that well-posed boundary conditions for modeling fluid flow in open domains can be derived from the theory of characteristics. In the case of two independent variables  $x, t$ , characteristics are curves  $x(t)$ , which, if used as coordinate axes, reduce a set of coupled p.d.e.’s to a set of uncoupled o.d.e.’s. They arise during attempts to construct, through Taylor series expansion, the solution of a system of p.d.e.’s in the vicinity of a boundary curve in  $x, t$  space along which the dependent variables and their normal derivatives are prescribed. Specifically, characteristics are curves that are unsuitable as boundary curves because the Taylor series coefficients cannot be uniquely determined from conditions prescribed along these curves.

Consider a simple hyperbolic system describing gravity wave propagation in a shallow fluid layer moving at speed  $U$ :

$$\begin{aligned} u_t + U_0 u_x + g h_x &= 0 \\ h_t + U_0 h_x + H u_x &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (267)$$

There are two sets of characteristics in this problem; their respective slopes in the  $x, t$  plane are

$$\left( \frac{\partial x}{\partial t} \right)_{char} = U_0 \pm c, \quad (268)$$

where  $c = \sqrt{gH}$  is the gravity wave phase speed. Following the characteristics in  $x, t$  space is equivalent to tracking gravity waves that propagate upstream and downstream through the moving fluid.

The o.d.e.'s obtained by transforming  $x, t$  derivatives in the set of p.d.e.'s in (267) into derivatives taken along characteristics are

$$\begin{aligned} u_s + c_1 h_s &= 0 \\ u_s - c_1 h_s &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (269)$$

where  $c_1 = \sqrt{g/H}$  and subscript  $s$  denotes differentiation along a characteristic. After integration over  $s$ , these equations state that  $u + c_1 h$  and  $u - c_1 h$ , respectively, are constant along the two sets of characteristics. The solution at a given point  $x, t$  can therefore be constructed by superimposing  $u, h$  combinations carried along the two characteristics intersecting at  $x, t$ . This applies to interior as well as boundary points.

Let  $c \gg U_0 > 0$ . On the upstream or "western" boundary, two characteristics,  $U_0 + c$  going from west to east and  $U_0 - c$  going from east to west, bring in information from the exterior (provided by observations or a coarse-mesh model) and from the interior, respectively. The combination of these two characteristics yields the final boundary values of  $u$  and  $h$ . If superscript  $o$  denotes values obtained from the outer coarse-mesh model or data,  $i$  denotes values from the inner, fine-mesh model, and  $*$  denotes the actual boundary values, then

$$\begin{aligned} u * + c_1 h * &= u^o + c_1 h^o \\ u * - c_1 h * &= u^i - c_1 h^i. \end{aligned} \quad (270)$$

This is a system of two equations for the two sought-after boundary values  $u*, h*$ . The solutions are

$$\begin{aligned} u * &= \frac{1}{2} [u^o + u^i + c_1 (h^o - h^i)] \\ h * &= \frac{1}{2} [h^o + h^i + c_1^{-1} (u^o - u^i)]. \end{aligned} \quad (271)$$

Boundary conditions for the case  $U_0 < 0$  and the eastern boundary are analogous. If the model contains thermodynamic variables satisfying conservation laws dominated by advection processes, the method of characteristics suggests that these variables should be updated by coarse mesh fields or data at inflow points, and from within the model at outflow points.

### 16.2.3 Barotropic and baroclinic velocities

Prescribing the mass flux across boundaries is the most direct way to stabilize the time-mean circulation in subbasins forced by strong inflow/outflow. Nudging is performed by replacing a grid point value  $\phi$  by a linear combination of  $\phi$  and a prescribed value  $\phi_b$ :

$$\phi_{new} = (1 - w) \phi + w \phi_b. \quad (272)$$

If nudging is performed in a finite-width sponge zone, the weight  $w$  should gradually increase from zero in the interior of the domain to a finite value  $\leq 1$  at the boundary. The width of the sponge zone where  $w > 0$  and the rate at which  $w$  increases toward the boundary is best determined by experimentation.

The same goes for the viscosity enhancement factor and the damping factor applied to the layer thickness tendency. The damping factor should increase from near-zero at the domain boundary to a value of 1 at the inner edge of the sponge zone. Viscosity may be increased stepwise to as much as 5 or even 10 times its value outside the sponge zone.

## 17 Equation of state and Related Issues

### 17.1 Equation of state

The equation of state embedded in HYCOM is the approximation to the UNESCO equation of state described by Brydon *et al.* (2001). At a given reference pressure level  $p$ , the density in sigma units is given by a seven term polynomial function cubic in potential temperature  $\theta$  and linear in salinity  $S$ :

$$\sigma(\theta, S, p) = C_1(p) + C_2(p)\theta + C_3(p)S + C_4(p)\theta^2 + C_5(p)S\theta + C_6(p)\theta^3 + C_7(p)S\theta^2.$$

One advantage of this simple polynomial representation is that it can be inverted to calculate  $\theta(\sigma, S, p)$  and  $S(\sigma, \theta, p)$ .

Three sets of coefficients are provided in HYCOM for reference pressures of 0, 20, and 40 Mpa. The sigma values calculated with these sets of coefficients are referred to as  $\sigma_0$ ,  $\sigma_2$ , and  $\sigma_4$ , respectively. If the user selects  $\sigma_0$  to represent model vertical coordinates, the density structure will be represented reasonably well in the upper ocean. In the deep ocean, however, regions will exist where  $\sigma_0$  does not increase monotonically with depth, causing model vertical coordinate interfaces to fold over. The user must consider this problem in choosing the proper set of density coordinates for model simulations.

### 17.2 Cabbeling

Cabbeling is not an issue when HYCOM is run in MICOM mode since there is no penetrating shortwave radiation, and since salinity alone is advected and diffused within isopycnic layers. When HYCOM is run with hybrid vertical coordinates, however, cabbeling is an issue because temperature and salinity are always mixed in the vertical and shortwave radiation can penetrate into the isopycnic coordinate domain. Horizontal advection and diffusion of temperature and salinity, and fluxes of temperature and salinity across vertical coordinates relocated by the hybrid coordinate algorithm can also contribute to cabbeling. When HYCOM is run with hybrid vertical coordinates, reliance is placed on the hybrid vertical coordinate adjustment algorithm to restore and maintain isopycnic conditions.

There are two ways by which the user can reduce the influence of cabbeling. HYCOM contains the option of horizontally advecting and diffusing salinity and density, or temperature and density, instead of temperature and salinity. HYCOM also has the option to flux salinity and density, or temperature and density, instead of temperature and salinity, across vertical coordinates relocated by the hybrid coordinate algorithm. For further information on the problems that can be caused by cabbeling, refer to Sections 3 and 9.

### 17.3 Thermobaric compressibility

HYCOM 2.0.01 is equipped with the algorithm of Sun *et al.* (1999) to account for the dynamical influence of thermobaric compressibility, or thermobaricity.

## 17.4 Usage

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

### 17.4.1 Order of Operations

\* INSERT TEXT HERE \*

## 18 Sub-programs

### 18.1 Functions

Calculation of the harmonic average of two variables *a* and *b* :

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

Calculation of the latitude *alat* as a function of the distance *dist1* to the equator and of the size of the mesh *grid* in degrees of latitude :

$$\text{alat}(\text{dist1}, \text{grid}) = (2. * \text{atan}(\exp(\text{dist1} * \text{grid} / \text{radian})) - \pi / 2.)$$

Calculation of the distance *dist* to the equator as a function of the latitude *alat* and of the size of the mesh *grid* in degrees of latitude :

$$\text{dist}(\text{alat1}, \text{grid}) = \log(\tan((2. * \text{alat1} + \pi) / 4.)) * \text{radian} / \text{grid}$$

Determination of the depth at calculational points *u* and *v* :

```
[***** ADD SOURCE CODE HERE *****]
```

### 18.2 Initialization Subroutines

Table 3: Initialization Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>blkdat.f</i>	blkdat	Initializes common variables.
	blkidr	Reads in one named real value on unit 99.
	blkini	Reads in one named integer value on unit 99.
	blkiln	Reads in one named logical value on unit 99.
<i>inicon.f</i>	inicon	Sets all initial values to zero.
<i>inikpp.f</i>	inikpp	Initialize Large, Mc.Williams, Doney KPP vertical mixing scheme.

#### 18.2.1 Subroutine BLKDAT

BLKDAT initializes common variables. It contains no arguments or common blocks.

**18.2.2 Subroutine BLKINR**

BLKINR reads in one named real value on unit 99.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine blkir(rvar, cvar, cfmt)

**Data Declaration:** Character cvar, cfmt  
Real rvar

**Arguments:** rvar  
cvar  
cfmt

**18.2.3 Subroutine BLKINI**

BLKINI reads in one named integer value on unit 99.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine blkini(ivar, cvar)

**Data Declaration:** Character cvar  
Integer ivar

**Arguments:** ivar  
cvar

**18.2.4 Subroutine BLKINL**

BLKINL reads in one named logical value on unit 99.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine blkinl(lvar, cvar)

**Data Declaration:** Character cvar  
Logical lvar

**Arguments:** lvar  
cvar

**18.2.5 Subroutine INICON**

INICON performs mass field initialization.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine inicon(mnth)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mnth

**Arguments:** mnth

**18.2.6 Subroutine INIKPP**

INIKPP initializes Large, MC Williams, Doney KPP vertical mixing scheme. It contains no arguments.

**Common Blocks:** kppltr

### 18.3 Bathymetry Subroutines

Table 4: Bathymetry Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>bigrid.f</i>	bigrid	Determines boundaries for the four points which bound the mesh.
	indxi, indxj	Determines i/j loop indices corresponding to a land/sea mask.
<i>geopar.f</i>	geopar	Set up model parameters related to geography.

#### 18.3.1 Subroutine BIGRID

BIGRID sets loop bounds for irregular basin in c-grid configuration.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine bigrid(depth, util1, util2, util3)

**Data Declaration:** Real depth, util1, util2, util3

**Arguments:**

depth	Basin depth array, zero values indicate land.
util1	
util2	
util3	

#### 18.3.2 Subroutine INDXI

INDXI determines i loop index corresponding to a land/sea mask.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine indxi(ipt, if, il, is)

**Data Declaration:** Integer ipt, if, il, is

**Arguments:**

ipt	Input array. Contains 1 at grid point locations, 0 elsewhere.
if	Row index of first point in column j for k <sup>th</sup> section.
il	Row index of last point in column j for k <sup>th</sup> section.
is	Number of sections in column j (maximum: ms).

### 18.3.3 Subroutine **INDXJ**

INDXJ determines j loop index corresponding to a land/sea mask.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `indxj(jpt,jf,jl,js)`

**Data Declaration:** Integer `jpt, jf, jl, js`

**Arguments:**

<code>jpt</code>	Input array. Contains 1 at grid point locations, 0 elsewhere.
<code>jf</code>	Column index of first point in row i for k-th section.
<code>jl</code>	Column index of last point in row i for k-th section.
<code>js</code>	Number of section in row i (maximum: <code>ms</code> ).

### 18.3.4 Subroutine **GEOPAR**

GEOPAR sets up model parameters related to geography. It contains no arguments or common blocks.

## 18.4 Main HYCOM Subroutines

Table 5: Main HYCOM Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>barotp.f</i>	barotp	Advance barotropic equations from baroclinic time level -m- to level -n-.
<i>cnuity.f</i>	cnuity	Continuity equation (flux-corrected transport version).
<i>convec.f</i>	convch	Convective adjustment.
	convcm	Entrain water lighter than mixed-layer water into mixed layer.
<i>diapfl.f</i>	diapfl	KPP-style implicit interior diapycnal mixing.
	diapflaj	
	diapflbj	
	diapflaij	Diapycnal mixing, single i,j point (part A).
	diapfluij	Diapycnal mixing, single i,j point, momentum at u grid points.
	diapflvij	Diapycnal mixing, single i,j point, momentum at v grid points.
<i>diapfl.f</i>	diapf2	MICOM-style explicit interior diapycnal mixing for hybrid coordinates.
	diapf2j	Diapycnal mixing, single j-row.
	diapf3	MICOM-style explicit interior diapycnal mixing for isopycnal coordinates.
	diapf3j	Diapycnal mixing, single j-row.
<i>hybgen.f</i>	hybgen	Hybrid grid generator.
	hybgenaj	Hybrid grid generator, single j-row (part A).
	hybgenbj	Hybrid grid generator, single j-row (part B).
<i>icloan.f</i>	icloan	'Energy loan' ice model. No advection, no dynamics.
<i>latbdp.f</i>	latbdp	Apply lateral boundary conditions to barotropic flow field.
<i>momtum.f</i>	momtum	Momentum equation.
<i>mxkpp.f</i>	mxkpp	Large, Mc.Williams, Doney KPP vertical diffusion.
	mxkppaj	Calculate viscosity and diffusivity.
	mxkppbj	Final mixing at p points.
	mxkppcj	Final velocity mixing at u,v points.
	mxkppaij	KPP vertical diffusion, single j-row (part A).
	mxkppbij	KPP vertical diffusion, single j-row (part B). Performs the final vertical mixing at p points.

<b>File</b>	<b>Subroutine</b>	<b>Description</b>
	mxkppcij	KPP vertical diffusion, single j-row (part A), momentum at u grid points.
	mxkppcijv	KPP vertical diffusion, single j-row (part A), momentum at v grid points.
	wscale	Subroutine to compute turbulent velocity scales for KPP mixing scheme.
<i>mxkrt.f</i>	mxkrta	Kraus-Turner vertical diffusion for the bulk surface mixed layer.
	mxkrtaaj	
	mxkrtabj	
	mxkrtb	
	mxkrtbaj	
	mxkrtbody	
<i>mxkrtm.f</i>	mxkrtm	
	mxkrtmaj	
	mxkrtbody	
<i>thermf.f</i>	thermf	Calculates thermal balance.
	thermfj	
<i>tsadv.f</i>	advem	Calculates third-order numerical scheme for advection of heat and salt.
	tsadv	Calculates the horizontal equations of advection-diffusion of heat and salt.

## 18.5 Atmospheric Forcing Subroutines

Table 6: Atmospheric Forcing Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>dpthuv.f</i>	dpthuv	Defines water depth (bottom pressure) at u,v points.
<i>dpudpv.f</i>	dpudpv	Defines layer depth at u,v points.
	dpudpvj	Defines layer depth at u,v points, single row.
	rdmonth	Reads a single array field from unit iunit.
	rdpall	Defines layer depth at u,v points.
	rdpall1	Copies field(:, :, 2) into field(:, :, 1), and reads a high frequency forcing field into field(:, :, 2).
	rdforf	Read forcing functions for one month.
	rdrlax	Read relaxation fields for one month, monthly (clmflg = 12) or bi-monthly (clmflg = 6) data.
	<i>forfun.f</i>	forday
forfuna		Initializes input of atmospheric forcing fields.
forfunh		High frequency atmospheric forcing field processing.
forfunr		Initializes input of relaxation forcing fields.

### 18.5.1 Subroutine DPTHUV

DPTHUV defines water depth (bottom pressure) at u,v points. It contains no arguments or common blocks.

### 18.5.2 Subroutine DPUDPV

DPUDPV defines layer depth at u,v points.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine dpudpv(p, depthu, depthv, dpu, dpv)

**Data Declaration:** Real p, depthu, depthv, dpu, dpv

**Arguments:** p  
depthu  
depthv  
dpu  
dpv

**18.5.3 Subroutine DPUDPVJ**

DPUDPVJ defines layer depth at u,v points, single row.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine dpudpvj(p, depthu, depthv, dpu, dpv, j)

**Data Declaration:** Integer j  
Real p, depthu, depthv, dpu, dpv

**Arguments:** p  
depthu  
depthv  
dpu  
dpv  
j

**18.5.4 Subroutine RDMONTH**

RDMONTH reads a single array field from unit iunit.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine rdmonth(field, iunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iunit  
Real field

**Arguments:** iunit  
field

**18.5.5 Subroutine RDPALL**

RDPALL defines layer depth at u,v points.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine rdpall(dtime0, dtime1)

**Data Declaration:** Real dtime0, dtime1

**Arguments:** dtime0  
dtime1

**18.5.6 Subroutine RDPALL1**

RDPALL1 copies field(:, :, 2) into field(:, :, 1), and reads a high frequency forcing field into field(:, :, 2).

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine rdpall1(field, dtime, iunit)

**Data Declaration:** Real field, dtime  
Integer iunit

**Arguments:** field  
dtime  
iunit

**18.5.7 Subroutine RDFORF**

RDFORF reads forcing functions for one month.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine rdforf(mnth, lslot)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mnth, lslot

**Arguments:** mnth  
lslot

**Common Blocks:** rdforfi

**18.5.8 Subroutine RDRLAX**

RDRLAX defines layer depth at u,v points.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine rdrlax(month, lslot)

**Data Declaration:** Integer month, lslot

**Arguments:** month  
lslot

**Common Blocks:** rdforfi

**18.5.9 Subroutine FORDAY**

FORDAY converts model day to “calendar” date (year, julian-day, hour).

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine forday(dtime, yrflag, iyear, iday, ihour)

**Data Declaration:** Integer yrflag, iyear, iday, ihour  
Real dtime

**Arguments:** dtime  
yrflag  
iyear  
iday  
ihour

**18.5.10 Subroutine FORFUNA**

FORFUNA initializes input of atmospheric forcing fields. It does not require any arguments.

**Common Blocks:** rdforfi

**18.5.11 Subroutine FORFUNH**

FORFUNH processes high frequency atmospheric forcing fields.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine forfunh(dtime)

**Data Declaration:** Real dtime

**Arguments:** dtime

**18.5.12 Subroutine FORFUNR**

FORFUNR initializes input of relaxation forcing fields. It does not contain any arguments.

**Common Blocks:** rdforfi

## 18.6 Matrix Inversion Subroutines

Table 7: Matrix Inversion Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>matinv.f</i>	tridcof	Matrix inversion subroutine for implicit solution of vertical diffusion equation - tri-diagonal matrix.
	tridrhs	Matrix inversion subroutine for implicit solution of vertical diffusion equation - tri-diagonal matrix.
	tridmat	Matrix inversion subroutine for implicit solution of vertical diffusion equation - tri-diagonal matrix.

### 18.6.1 Subroutine TRIDCOF

TRIDCOF computes coefficients for tridiagonal matrix (dimension=kdm).

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine tridcof(diff, tri, nlayer, tcu, tcc, tcl)

**Data Declaration:** Integer nlayer  
Real diff, tcu, tcc, tcl, tri

**Arguments:** diff Diffusivity profile on interfaces.  
tri Dt/dz/dz factors in a tridiagonal matrix.  
nlayer  
tcu Upper coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
tcc Central coefficient for (k) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
tcl Lower coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.

### 18.6.2 Subroutine TRIDRHS

TRIDRHS computes the right hand side of the tridiagonal matrix for scalar fields.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine tridrhs(h, yo, diff, ghat, ghatflux, tri, nlayer, rhs)

**Data Declaration:** Integer nlayer  
Real diff, h, yo, ghat, ghatflux, rhs, tri

**Arguments:** diff Diffusivity profile on interfaces.  
tri Dt/dz/dz factors in a tridiagonal matrix.

nlayer	
h	Layer thickness.
yo	Old profile.
ghat	Ghat turbulent flux.
ghatflux	Surface flux for ghat: includes solar flux.
rhs	Right hand side.

### 18.6.3 Subroutine TRIDMAT

TRIDMAT solves a tridiagonal matrix for new vector yn, given right hand side vector rhs.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine tridmat(tcu, tcc, tcl, nlayer, h, rhs, yo, yn, diff)

**Data Declaration:** Integer nlayer  
Real diff, h, yo, tcu, tcc, tcl, rhs, yn

**Arguments:** diff Diffusivity profile on interfaces.  
nlayer  
h Layer thickness.  
yo Old profile.  
rhs Right hand side.  
tcu Upper coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
tcc Central coefficient for (k) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
tcl Lower coefficient for (k-1) on k line of tridiagonal matrix.  
yn New field.

## 18.7 Communication Subroutines

The following table contains descriptions of all HYCOM communication subroutines. With the exception of XCHALT, all subroutines are assumed to be called with identical argument lists by all processors when using SPMD message passing. Two versions of each subroutine are provided, `mod_xc_mp.F` for message passing, and `mod_xc_sm.F` for a single processor. The appropriate version is included in `mod_xc.F` under control of `cpp` macros. The routines are configured as a module, and all HYCOM routines should start with `use mod_xc` to allow HYCOM communication routines to be invoked when required.

Table 8: HYCOM Communication Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>mod_xc_mp.f</i>	xcaget	Converts an entire 2-D array from tiled to non-tiled layout.
	xcaput	Converts an entire 2-D array from non-tiled to tiled layout.
	xceget	Finds the value of $a(ia,ja)$ on the non-tiled 2-D grid.
	xceput	Fills a single element in the non-tiled 2-D grid.
	xchalt	Emergency stops all processes, called by one process.
	xclget	Extracts a line of elements from the non-tiled 2-D grid.
	xclput	Fills a line of elements in the non-tiled 2-D grid.
	xcmaxr_0	Replaces a scalar $a$ with its element-wise maximum over all tiles.
	xcmaxr_1	Replaces an array $a$ with its element-wise maximum over all tiles.
	xcminr_0	Replaces a scalar $a$ with its element-wise minimum over all tiles.
	xcminr_1	Replaces an array $a$ with its element-wise minimum over all tiles.
	xcspmd	Initializes data structures that identify the tiles.
	xcstop	Stops all processes, called by all processes.
	xcsum	Sums a 2-D array, where $mask = 1$ .
	xcsumj	Row-sum of a 2-D array, where $mask = 1$ , on first processor only.
	xcsync	Barrier, no processor exits until all arrive (and flush stdout).
	xctbar	Provides synchronization with processors <code>ipe1</code> and <code>ipe2</code> .
	xctilr	Updates the tile overlap halo of a 3-D real array.
	xctmri	Initializes timers.
	xctmr0	Starts timer $n$ .
xctmr1	Adds time since call to <code>xctim0</code> to timer $n$ .	
xctmrn	Registers name of timer $n$ .	

---

<i>mod_xc_sm.f</i>	xctmrp	Prints all active timers. This file contains the shared memory version of all the sub-routines in mod_xc_mp.
--------------------	--------	---

---

### 18.7.1 Subroutine XCAGET

XCAGET converts an entire 2-D array from tiled to non-tiled layout.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcaget(aa, a, mnflg)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mnflg  
Real aa, a

**Arguments:**

aa	Non-tiled target array.
a	Tiled source array.
mnflg	Node-return flag. = 0, all nodes; = n, node number n (mnproc=n).

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii

### 18.7.2 Subroutine XCAPUT

XCAPUT converts an entire 2-D array from non-tiled to tiled layout.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcput(aa, a, mnflg)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mnflg  
Real aa, a

**Arguments:**

aa	Non-tiled source array.
a	Tiled target array.
mnflg	Node source flag. = 0, all nodes; = n, node number n (mnproc=n).

**18.7.3 Subroutine XCEGET**

XCEGET finds the value of  $a(ia,ja)$  on the non-tiled 2-D grid.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xceget(aelem, a, ia, ja)

**Data Declaration:** Integer ia, ja  
Real aelem, a

**Arguments:**

aelem	Required element.
a	Source array.
ia	1st index into $a$ .
ja	2nd index into $a$ .

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii  
xcegetr

**18.7.4 Subroutine XCEPUT**

XCEPUT fills a single element in the non-tiled 2-D grid.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xceput(aelem, a, ia, ja)

**Data Declaration:** Integer ia, ja  
Real aelem, a

**Arguments:**

aelem	Element value.
a	Target array.
ia	1st index into $a$ .
ja	2nd index into $a$ .

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii

**18.7.5 Subroutine XCHALT**

XCHALT stops all processes. Only one process need call this routine, i.e. it is for emergency stops. Use 'xcstop' for ordinary stops called by all processes.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xchalt(cerror)

**Data Declaration:** Character cerror

**Arguments:** cerror Error message.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii

### 18.7.6 Subroutine XCLGET

XCLGET extracts a line of elements from the non-tiled 2-D grid.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xclget(aline, nl, a, i1, j1, iinc, jinc, mnflg)

**Data Declaration:** Integer n1, i1, j1, iinc, jinc, mnflg  
Real aline, a

**Arguments:**

aline	Required line of elements.
n1	Dimension of aline.
a	Source array.
i1	1st index into <i>a</i> .
j1	2nd index into <i>a</i> .
iinc	1st index increment.
jinc	2nd index increment.
mnflg	Node return flag.
	= 0, all nodes;
	= n, node number n (mnproc=n).

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii  
xclgetr

### 18.7.7 Subroutine XCLPUT

XCLPUT fills a line of elements in the non-tiled 2-D grid.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xclput(aline, nl, a, i1, j1, iinc, jinc)

**Data Declaration:** Integer n1, i1, j1, iinc, jinc  
 Real aline, a

**Arguments:**

aline	Line of element values.
n1	Dimension of aline.
a	Target array.
i1	1st index into <i>a</i> .
j1	2nd index into <i>a</i> .
iinc	1st index increment.
jinc	2nd index increment.

#### 18.7.8 Subroutine XCMAXR\_0

XCMAXR\_0 replaces scalar *a* with its element-wise maximum over all tiles.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcmxr\_0(*a*)

**Data Declaration:** Real a

**Arguments:** a Target variable.

#### 18.7.9 Subroutine XCMAXR\_1

XCMAXR\_1 replaces array *a* with its element-wise maximum over all tiles.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcmxr\_1(*a*)

**Data Declaration:** Real a

**Arguments:** a Target array.

#### 18.7.10 Subroutine XCMINR\_0

XCMINR\_0 replaces scalar *a* with its element-wise minimum over all tiles.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcminr\_0(*a*)

**Data Declaration:** Real a

**Arguments:** a Target variable.

#### 18.7.11 Subroutine XCMINR\_1

XCMINR\_1 replaces array *a* with its element-wise minimum over all tiles.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcmnr\_1(a)

**Data Declaration:** Real a

**Arguments:** a Target array.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii  
xcmaxr4

#### 18.7.12 Subroutine XCSPMD

XCSPMD initializes data structures that identify the tiles. It contains no arguments.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii

#### 18.7.13 Subroutine XCSTOP

XCSTOP stops all processes. All processes must call this routine.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcstop(cerror)

**Data Declaration:** Character cerror

**Arguments:** cerror Error message.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii

**18.7.14 Subroutine XCSUM**

XCSUM sums a 2-D array, where mask=1.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcsun(sum, a, mask)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mask  
Real sum, a

**Arguments:** sum Sum of a.  
a Source array.  
mask Mask array.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpi  
xcsun8

**18.7.15 Subroutine XCSUMJ**

XCSUMJ is a row-sum of a 2-D array, where mask==1, on first processor only.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine xcsun(sumj, a, mask)

**Data Declaration:** Integer mask  
Real sum, a

**Arguments:** sumj Row-sum of a.  
a Source array.  
mask Mask array.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpi  
xcsun8

**18.7.16 Subroutine XCSYNC**

XCSYNC is a barrier, no processor exits until all arrive (and flush stdout). Some MPI implementations only flush stdout as a collective operation, and hence the lflush=.true. option to flush stdout. Typically, this is just a wrapper to the "BARRIER" macro.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `xcsync(lflush)`

**Data Declaration:** Logical `lflush`

**Arguments:**

<code>lflush</code>	
<code>a</code>	Source array.
<code>mask</code>	Mask array.

**Common Blocks:** `xcmpii`

### 18.7.17 Subroutine **XCTBAR**

XCTBAR is a global collective operation, and the calls on `ipe1` and `ipe2` must list this processor as one of the two targets. This is used in place of a global barrier in halo operations, but it only provides synchronization of one or two processors with the local processor. `ipe1` and/or `ipe2` can be `null_tile`, to indicate no processor.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `xctbar(ipe1, ipe2)`

**Data Declaration:** Integer `ipe1, ipe2`

**Arguments:**

<code>ipe1</code>	Processor 1.
<code>ipe2</code>	Processor 2.

**Common Blocks:** `halobp`

### 18.7.18 Subroutine **XCTILR**

XCTILR updates the tile overlap halo of a real array.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `xctilr(a, l1, ld, mh, nh, itype)`

**Data Declaration:**

Integer	<code>l1, ld, mh, nh, itype</code>
Real	<code>a</code>

**Arguments:**

a	Target array.
l1	Third dimension start index.
ld	Third dimension of a.
mh	First (EW) update halo size.
nh	Second (NS) update halo size.
itype	Grid and field type. = 1, p-grid, scalar field; = 2, q-grid, scalar field; = 3, u-grid, scalar field; = 4, v-grid, scalar field; = 11, p-grid, vector field; = 12, q-grid, vector field; = 13, u-grid, vector field; = 14, v-grid, vector field.

**Common Blocks:** xcmpii  
xctlr4

### 18.7.19 Subroutine XCTMR\*

XCTMR\* are timer subroutines.

XCTMRI	Initializes timers. Timers 1 to 32 are for message passing routines, timers 33 to 80 are for general hycom routines, timers 81 to 96 are for user selected routines, and timer 97 is the total time.
XCTMR0	Starts timer n.
XCTMR1	Stops timer n and adds event to timer sum.
XCTMRN	Registers a name for timer n.
XCTMRP	Printout timer statistics (called by xctest).

**Calling Sequence:**

Subroutine xctmri()
Subroutine xctmr0(n)
Subroutine xctmr1(n)
Subroutine xctmrn(n, cname)
Subroutine xctmrp()

**Data Declaration:**

Character	cname
Integer	n

**Arguments:**            n            Timer number.  
                          cname       Registered name of timer.

**Common Blocks:**    xcmpii

## 18.8 Machine Dependent I/O Subroutines

Table 9: Machine Dependent I/O Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>machine.f</i>	machine	Machine-specific initialization.
	flush	Wrapper for flush system call under AIX.
	ieee_retrospective	Dummy routine to turn off ieee warning messages on a Sun.
	getenv	This subroutine provides getenv functionality on the t3e, using pxfgetenv.
<i>mod_zam_p1.f</i>		Machine dependent I/O routines. Message passing version, with all I/O from first processor. Contained in module mod_zam.
	zaiopn	Machine specific routine for opening a file for array I/O.
	zaiopw	Machine specific routine for opening a file for array I/O.
	zaiopf	Machine specific routine for opening a file for array I/O.
	zaiopi	Is an array I/O unit open?
	zaiost	Machine specific routine for initializing array I/O.
	zaiocl	Machine specific routine for array i/o file closing.
	zaiofl	Machine specific routine for array I/O buffer flushing.
	zaiorw	Machine specific routine for array I/O file rewinding.
	zaiord3	Machine specific routine for 3-D array reading.
	zaiord	Machine specific routine for array reading.
	zaiordd	Direct access reads a single record.
	zaiosk	Machine specific routine for skipping an array read.
	zaiowr3	Machine specific routine for 3-D array writing.
	zaiowr	Machine specific routine for array writing.
	zaiowrd	Direct access writes a single record.
	<i>mod_zam_sm.f</i>	

### 18.8.1 Subroutine MACHINE

MACHINE performs machine-specific initialization.

### 18.8.2 Subroutine FLUSH

FLUSH is a wrapper for flush system call under AIX.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine flush(iunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iunit

**Arguments:** iunit

### 18.8.3 Subroutine IEEE\_RETROSPECTIVE

IEEE\_RETROSPECTIVE is a dummy routine to turn off iee warning messages on a Sun.

### 18.8.4 Subroutine GETENV

GETENV provides getenv functionality on the t3e using PXFGETENV.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine getenv(cname, cvalue)

**Data Declaration:** Character cname, cvalue

**Arguments:** cname  
cvalue

### 18.8.5 Subroutine ZAIOPN

ZAIOPN is a machine specific routine for opening a file for array i/o.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiopn(cstat, iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Character cstat  
Integer iaunit

**Arguments:** cstat File type, it can be 'scratch', 'old', or 'new'.  
iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but,  
for compatability, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a  
fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx  
czioxw

**18.8.6 Subroutine ZAIOPE**

ZAIOPE is a machine specific routine for opening a file for array i/o.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiope(cenv, cstat, iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Character cenv, cstat  
Integer iaunit

**Arguments:**

cenv	Environment variable from which the filename is taken.
cstat	File type, it can be 'scratch', 'old', or 'new'.
iaunit	iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatability, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx  
czioxw

**18.8.7 Subroutine ZAIOPF**

ZAIOPF is a machine specific routine for opening a file for array i/o.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiopf(cfile, cstat, iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Character cfile, cstat  
Integer iaunit

**Arguments:**

cfile	Variable from which the filename is taken.
cstat	File type, it can be 'scratch', 'old', or 'new'.
iaunit	iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx  
czioxw

**18.8.8 Subroutine ZAIOP1**

ZAIOP1 determines if an i/o array is open.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiopi(lopen, iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iaunit  
Logical lopen

**Arguments:** lopen  
iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

**18.8.9 Subroutine ZAIOST**

ZAIOST is a machine specific routine for initializing array i/o. It contains no arguments.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

**18.8.10 Subroutine ZAIACL**

ZAIACL is a machine specific routine for array i/o file closing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiocl(iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iaunit

**Arguments:** iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

**18.8.11 Subroutine ZAIOFL**

ZAIOFL is a machine specific routine for array i/o buffer flushing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaioff(iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iaunit

**Arguments:** iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but,  
for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a  
fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

**18.8.12 Subroutine ZAIORW**

ZAIORW is a machine specific routine for array i/o file rewinding.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiorw(iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iaunit

**Arguments:** iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but,  
for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a  
fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

**18.8.13 Subroutine ZAIORD3**

ZAIORD3 is a machine specific routine for 3-D array reading.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiord3(h, l, mask, lmask, hmin, hmax, iaunit)

<b>Data Declaration:</b>	Integer	l, mask, iaunit
	Logical	lmask
	Real	h, hmin, hmask
<b>Arguments:</b>	h	Array to be read.
	l	Number of times zaiord3 is called.
	mask	
	lmask	
	hmin	Minimum value in the array <i>h</i> , ignoring array elements set to 2.0**100.
	hmax	Maximum value in the array <i>h</i> , ignoring array elements set to 2.0**100.
	iaunit	iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.

#### 18.8.14 Subroutine ZAIORD

ZAIORD is a machine specific routine for array reading.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiord(*h*, *mask*, *lmask*, *hmin*, *hmax*, *iaunit*)

<b>Data Declaration:</b>	Integer	mask, iaunit
	Logical	lmask
	Real	hmin, hmax
<b>Arguments:</b>	h	Array.
	mask	
	lmask	
	hmin	Minimum value in the array <i>h</i> , ignoring array elements set to 2.0**100.
	hmax	Maximum value in the array <i>h</i> , ignoring array elements set to 2.0**100.
	iaunit	iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.
<b>Common Blocks:</b>	czioxx	
	czioxw	

czioxr

### 18.8.15 Subroutine ZAIORDD

ZAIORDD is direct access to read a single record. It is expressed as a subroutine because i/o with implied do loops can be slow on some machines.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiordd(a, n, iunit, irec, ios)

**Data Declaration:** Integer n, iunit, irec, ios  
Real a

**Arguments:** a  
n  
iunit  
irec  
ios

### 18.8.16 Subroutine ZAIOSK

ZAIOSK is a machine specific routine for skipping an array read.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiosk(iaunit)

**Data Declaration:** Integer iaunit

**Arguments:** iaunit iaunit+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays.  
Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but,  
for compatibility, assume that iaunit+1000 refers to a  
fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:** czioxx

### 18.8.17 Subroutine ZAIOWR3

ZAIOWR3 is a machine specific routine for 3-D array writing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiowr3(*h*, *l*, *mask*, *lmask*, *hmin*, *hmax*, *iaunit*, *lreal4*)

**Data Declaration:** Integer *l*, *mask*, *iaunit*  
 Logical *lmask*, *lreal4*  
 Real *hmin*, *hmask*

**Arguments:** *h*  
*l* Number of times subroutine is called.  
*mask*  
*lmask*  
*hmin* Minimum value in the array *h*, ignoring array elements set to 2.0\*\*100.  
*hmax* Maximum value in the array *h*, ignoring array elements set to 2.0\*\*100.  
*iaunit* *iaunit*+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that *iaunit*+1000 refers to a fortran i/o unit anyway.  
*lreal4*

### 18.8.18 Subroutine ZAIOWR

ZAIOWR is a machine specific routine for array writing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zaiowr(*h*, *mask*, *lmask*, *hmin*, *hmax*, *iaunit*, *lreal4*)

**Data Declaration:** Integer *iaunit*, *mask*  
 Logical *lmask*, *lreal4*  
 Real *h*, *hmin*, *hmax*

**Arguments:** *h*  
*mask*  
*lmask*  
*hmin* Minimum value in the array *h*, ignoring array elements set to 2.0\*\*100.  
*hmax* Maximum value in the array *h*, ignoring array elements set to 2.0\*\*100.  
*iaunit* *iaunit*+1000 is the i/o unit used for arrays. Array i/o might not use fortran i/o units, but, for compatibility, assume that *iaunit*+1000 refers to a

fortran i/o unit anyway.

**Common Blocks:**    czioxx  
                      czioxw  
                      czioxr

#### 18.8.19 Subroutine ZAIOWRD

ZAIOWRD is direct access to write a single record. It is expressed as a subroutine because i/o with implied do loops can be slow on some machines.

**Calling Sequence:**    Subroutine zaiowrd(a, n, iunit, irec, ios)

**Data Declaration:**    Integer    n, iunit, irec, ios  
                      Real        a

**Arguments:**         a  
                      n  
                      iunit  
                      irec  
                      ios

## 18.9 Pipe Comparison Subroutines

Table 10: Pipe Comparison Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>mod_pipe.f</i>	pipe_init	Initializes the pipe comparison process.
	pipe_compare	Subroutine checks whether data stored in ‘field’ are identical.
	pipe_comparall	Writes out a standard menu of arrays for testing.

### 18.9.1 Subroutine PIPE\_INIT

PIPE\_INIT initializes the pipe comparison process.

### 18.9.2 Subroutine PIPE\_COMPARE

PIPE\_COMPARE checks whether or not data stored in ‘field’ are identical.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine pipe\_compare(field, mask, what)

**Data Declaration:** Real field  
Integer mask  
Character what

**Arguments:** field  
mask  
what

### 18.9.3 Subroutine PIPE\_COMPARALL

PIPE\_COMPARALL writes out a standard menu of arrays for testing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine pipe\_comparall(m, n, cinfo)

**Data Declaration:** Integer m, n  
Character cinfo

**Arguments:** m,n  
cinfo

## 18.10 Diagnostic Output Subroutines

Table 11: Diagnostic Output Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>overtn.f</i>	overtn	Diagnose meridional heat flux in basin mode.
<i>stencil.f</i>	stencil	Writes 5 x 5 point cluster of grid point values centered on (itest,jtest). (Present, but not used in HYCOM)

### 18.10.1 Subroutine OVERTN

OVERTN is used to diagnose meridional heat flux in basin the model.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `overtn(dtime, dyear)`

**Data Declaration:** Real dtime, dyear

**Arguments:** dtime  
dyear

### 18.10.2 Subroutine STENCL

STENCL writes a 5 x 5 point cluster of grid point values centered on (itest, jtest).

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `stencil(k1, n)`

**Data Declaration:** Integer n, k1

**Arguments:** k1  
n

## 18.11 Plotting Subroutines

### 18.11.1 Subroutine PRTMSK

PRTMSK deletes ‘array’ elements outside ‘mask’, then breaks ‘array’ into sections, each ‘nchar’ characters wide, for printing.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine `prtmsk(mask, array, work, idm, ii, jj, offset, scale, title)`

Table 12: Plotting Subroutines

File	Subroutine	Description
<i>prtmsk.f</i>	prtmsk	Delete 'array' elements outside 'mask'. Then break 'array' into sections, each 'nchar' characters wide, for printing.
<i>psmoo.f</i>	psmooth	Ragged boundary version of basic 9-point smoothing routine. This routine is set up to smooth data carried at -p- points.
	psmooth_max	Ragged boundary version of basic 9-point smoothing routine. This routine is set up to smooth data carried at -p- points and to return the maximum of the original and smoothed value.
<i>zebra.f</i>	zebra	Find nice contour interval resulting in 7 to 10 contour lines and draw contours on line printer through the following set of grid points: array(1,nj); array(ni,nj), array(1,1) and array(ni,1).
	zebram	Find nice contour interval resulting in 7 to 10 contour lines and draw contours on line printer through the following set of grid points: array(1,1); array(1,jj); array(ii,jj) and array(ii,jj).
	digplt	Simulates a contour line plot on the printer.

**Data Declaration:** Real array, work, offset, scale  
Integer idm, mask, ii, jj  
Character title

**Arguments:** mask  
array  
work  
idm  
ii  
jj  
offset  
scale  
title

**Common Blocks:** linepr

**18.11.2 Subroutine PSMOOTH**

PSMOOTH is a ragged boundary version of basic 9-point smoothing routine. PSMOOTH is set up to smooth data carried at  $p$  points.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine psmooth( $a$ , margin\_smooth)

**Data Declaration:** Real  $a$   
Integer margin\_smooth

**Arguments:**  $a$   
margin\_smooth

**18.11.3 Subroutine PSMOOTH\_MAX**

PSMOOTH\_MAX is a ragged boundary version of basic 9-point smoothing routine. PSMOOTH\_MAX is set up to smooth data carried at  $p$  points and to return the maximum of the original and smoothed value.

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine psmooth\_max( $a$ , margin\_smooth)

**Data Declaration:** Real  $a$   
Integer margin\_smooth

**Arguments:**  $a$   
margin\_smooth

**18.11.4 Subroutine ZEBRA**

Subroutine ZEBRA finds a nice contour interval resulting in 7 to 10 contour lines and draws contours on line printer through grid points:  $(1,nj)$ ;  $(ni,nj)$ ;  $(1,1)$ ; and  $(ni,1)$ .

**Calling Sequence:** Subroutine zebra(array, idim, ni, nj)

**Data Declaration:** Integer idim, ni, nj  
Real array



**Acronyms**

FCT	Flux-Corrected Transport scheme
HCYCOM	HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model
KPP	K-Profile Parameterization model setup
KT	Kraus-Turner model setup
MICOM	Miami-Isopycnic-Coordinate Ocean Model
MKS	Meter, Kilogram and Second unit system
MLB	Mixed Layer Base
MPDATA	Multidimensional Positive Definite Advection Transport Algorithm
NOPP	National Oceanographic Partnership Program
NRL	Naval Research Laboratory
ONR	Office of Naval Research
PE	Potential Energy
POM	Princeton Ocean Model
TKE	Turbulent Kinetic Energy
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Or- ganization

## References

- Baraille, R. and Filatoff, N., (1995). Modèle shallow-water multicouches isopycnal de Miami. *Rapport d'Etude*, CMO/RE No 003/95.
- Bleck, R., (1978). Finite difference equations in general vertical coordinates. *Contrib. Atmos. Phys.*, **51**: 360-372.
- Bleck, R. and Boudra, D., (1981). Initial testing of a numerical ocean circulation model using a hybrid (quasi-isopycnic) vertical coordinate. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **11**: 755-770.
- Bleck, R. and Boudra, D.B., (1986). Wind-driven spin-up in eddy-resolving ocean models formulated in isopycnic and isobaric coordinates. *J. Geophys. Res.*, **91**(C): 7611-7621.
- Bleck, R., Hanson, H.H., Hu, D., and Kraus, E.B., (1989). Mixed layer-thermocline interaction in a 3D isopycnic coordinate model. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **19**: 1417-1439.
- Bleck, R. and Smith L.T., (1990). A wind-driven isopycnic coordinate model of the north and equatorial Atlantic ocean. I- model development and supporting experiments. *J. Geophys. Res.*, **95**(C): 3273-3285.
- Bleck, R., Rooth, C., Hu, D., and Smith, L.T., (1992). Salinity-driven thermocline transients in a wind- and thermohaline-forced isopycnic coordinate model of the North Atlantic. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **22**: 1486-1505.
- Bleck, R., Rooth, C., Hu, D., and Smith, L.T., (1992). Ventilation patterns and mode water formation in a wind- and thermodynamically driven isopycnic coordinate model of the North Atlantic. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **22**: 1486-1505.
- Bleck, R. and Benjamin, S., (1993). Regional weather prediction with a model combining terrainfollowing and isentropic coordinates, Part I: Model Description. *Mon. Wea. Rev.*, **121**: 1770-1785.
- Bleck, R., (1998). "Ocean Modeling in Isopycnic Coordinates" Ocean Modeling and Parameterization. Chassignet E.P. and Vernon J., eds., NATO Science Series C: Mathematical and Physical Sciences, Vol. 516. **Kluwer Academic Publishers**, p. 4223-448???
- Bleck, R., (2001). An oceanic general circulation model framed in hybrid isopycnic-Cartesian coordinates. *Submitted to???*
- Browning, G.L. and Kreiss, H.-O., (1982). Initialization of the shallow water equations with open boundaries by the bounded derivative method. *Tellus*, **34**: 334-351.
- Browning, G.L. and Kreiss, H.-O., (1986). Scaling and computation of smooth atmospheric motions. *Tellus*, **38A**: 295-313.
- Brydon, D., Sun, S. and Bleck, R., (2001). A new approximation of the equation of state for sea water, suitable for numerical models. *???????????*
- Canuto, V.M., (2000). Ocean Turbulence: A model with shear stratification and salinity. NASA Goddard Institute for Space Studies, Unpublished Manuscript.
- Chassignet, E.P., Smith, L.T., Bleck, R., and Bryan, F.O., (1996). A model comparison: Numerical simulations of the north and equatorial Atlantic oceanic circulation in depth and isopycnic coordinates. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **26**: 1849-1867.
- Chassignet, E.P., Smith, L., Halliwell, G.R., and Bleck, R., (2001). North Atlantic simulations with the HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM): Impact of the vertical

- coordinate choice and resolution, reference density and thermobaricity. To be submitted to (*currently undecided*).
- Cushman-Roisin, B., (1994). Introduction to Geophysical Fluid Dynamics. **Prentice Hall**, New-Jersey.
- Friedrich, H. and Levitus, S., (1972). An approximation to the equation of state for sea water, suitable for numerical ocean models. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **2**: 514-517.
- Gaspar, P., (1988). Modelling the seasonal cycle of the upper ocean. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **18**: 161-180.
- Halliwel Jr., G.R., (1997). Simulation of decadal/interdecadal variability the North Atlantic driver by the anomalous wind field. *In the Proc. on Climate Variations*, Long Beach, CA, 97-102.
- Halliwel Jr., G.R., (1998). Simulation of North Atlantic decadal/multi-decadal winter SST anomalies driven by basin-scale atmospheric circulation anomalies. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **28**: 5-21.
- Halliwel Jr., G.R., Bleck, R. and Chassignet, E., (1998). Atlantic ocean simulations performed using a new HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM). *EOS, Fall AGU Meeting*.
- Halliwel Jr., G.R., Bleck, R., Chassignet, E.P., and Smith, L.T., (2000). Mixed layer model validation in Atlantic ocean simulations using the HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM). *EOS, 80, OS304*.
- Halliwel Jr., G.R., (2001). Evaluation of vertical coordinate and vertical mixing algorithms in the HYbrid Coordinate Ocean Model (HYCOM). To be submitted to *Ocean Modeling*.
- Hu, D., (1991). A joint mixed layer/isopycnic coordinate numerical model of wind- and thermohaline- driven ocean general circulation with model sensitive study. *Ph.D.*, University of Miami, Florida, p. 220.
- Hu, D., (1996). On the sensitivity of thermocline depth and meridional heat transport to vertical diffusivity in OGCMs. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **26**: 1480-1494.
- Hu, D., (1997). Global-scale water masses, meridional circulation, and heat transport simulated with a global isopycnic ocean model. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **27**: 96-120.
- Jerlov, N.G., (1976). Marine Optics. **Elsevier Publishing**, New York.
- Kara, A.B., Rochford, P.A., and Hurlburt, H.E., (2000). Efficient and accurate bulk parameterizations of air-sea fluxes for use in general circulation models. *J. Atmos. Ocean Tech.*, **17**: 1421-1438.
- Kraus, E.B. and Turner, J.S., (1967). A one-dimensional model of the seasonal thermocline, Part II: The general theory and its consequences. *Tellus*, **19**: 98-105.
- Large, W.G., McWilliams, J.C. and Doney, S.C., (1994). Oceanic vertical mixing: A review and a model with a nonlocal boundary layer parameterization. *Rev. Geophys.*, **32**: 363-403.
- Large, W.G., Danabasoglu, G., Doney, S.C., and McWilliams, J.C., (1997). Sensitivity to surface forcing and boundary layer mixing in a global ocean model: Annual-mean climatology. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **27**: 2418-2447.

- Marsh, R., Roberts, M.J., Wood, R.A., and New, A.L., (1996). An intercomparison of a Bryan-Cox-type ocean model and an isopycnic ocean model, Part II: The subtropical gyre and meridional heat transport. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **26**: 1528-1551.
- McDougall, T.J. and Dewar, W.K., (1998). Vertical mixing and cabbeling in layered models. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **28**: 1458-1480.
- New, A., Bleck, R., Jia, Y., Marsh, R., Huddleston, M., and Barnard, S., (1995). An isopycnic model of the North Atlantic, Part I: Model Experiments. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **25**: 2667-2699.
- New, A. and Bleck, R., (1995). An isopycnic model of the North Atlantic, Part II: Interdecadal variability of the subtropical gyre. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **25**: 2700-2714.
- Niiler, P.P. and Kraus, E.B., (1977). A one-dimensional model of the upper ocean. In Modelling and Prediction of the Upper Layers of the Ocean. **Pergamon Press**, New York, p. 143-172.
- Oliger, J. and Sundstrom, A., (1978). Theoretical and practical aspects of some initial boundary value problems in fluid mechanics. *SIAM Appl. Math.*, **35**: 419-446.
- Peters, H., Gregg, M.C. and Toole, J.M., (1998). On the parameterization of equatorial turbulence. *J. Geophys. Res.*, **93**: 1199-1218.
- Roberts, M.J., Marsh, P., New, A.L., and Wood, R.A., (1996). An intercomparison of a Bryan-Cox-type ocean model and an isopycnic ocean model, Part I: The subpolar gyre and high-latitude processes. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **26**: 1495-1527.
- Semtner Jr., A.J., (1976). A model for the thermodynamic growth of sea ice in numerical simulations of climate. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **6**: 379-389.
- Smith, L.T., Chassignet, E.P., Bleck, R., and Halliwell, G.R., (2000). A hybrid coordinate open-boundary-condition regional model for the inter-American seas. *EOS, 80, OS71*.
- Smolarkiewicz, P.K., (1984). A fully multi-dimensional positive definite advection transport with small implicit diffusion. *J. Comput. Phys.*, **54**: 325-362.
- Smolarkiewicz, P.K. and Clark, T.L., (1986). The multi-dimensional positive definite advection transport algorithm: further development and applications. *J. Comput. Phys.*, **67**: 396-438.
- Smolarkiewicz, P.K. and Grabowski, W.W., (1990). The multi-dimensional positive definite advection transport algorithm: non-oscillatory Options. *J. Comput. Phys.*, **86**: 355-375.
- Sun, S., Bleck, R. and Chassignet, E.P., (1993). Layer outcropping in numerical models of stratified flows. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **23**: 1877-1884.
- Sun, S., Bleck, R., Rooth, C., Dukowicz, J., Chassignet, E., and Kilworth, P., (1999). Inclusion of thermobaricity in isopycnic-coordinate ocean models. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, **29**: 2719-2729.
- Zalesak, S., (1979). Fully multi-dimensional flux-corrected transport algorithms for fluids. *J. Comput. Phys.*, **31**: 335-362.